

REVISION RECORD FOR THE STATE OF CALIFORNIA

ERRATA

January 1, 2017

2016 Title 24, Part 2, Vol. 1, California Building Code

General Information:

1. The date of these errata is for identification purposes only. See the History Note Appendix at the end of the code.
2. These errata are issued by the California Building Standards Commission in order to correct nonsubstantive printing errors or omissions in California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Part 2, Volume 1, of the 2016 *California Building Code*. Instructions are provided below.
3. Health and Safety Code Section 18938.5 establishes that only building standards in effect at the time of the application for a building permit may be applied to the project plans and construction. This rule applies to both adoptions of building standards for Title 24 by the California Building Standards Commission and local adoptions and ordinances imposing building standards. An erratum to Title 24 is a nonregulatory correction because of a printing error or omission that does not differ substantively from the official adoption by the California Building Standards Commission. Accordingly, the corrected code text provided by this erratum may be applied on and after the stated effective date.
4. You may wish to retain the superseded material with this revision record so that the prior wording of any section can be easily ascertained.

Remove Existing Pages

xiii and xiv
xxv and xxvi
1 and 2
35 through 42
45 and 46
91 and 92
101 and 102
105 through 108
173 and 174
195 and 196
301 through 304
357 through 360
373 and 374
377 and 378
385 and 386
397 and 398

Insert Buff Colored Pages

xiii and xiv
xxv and xxvi
1 and 2
35 through 42
45 and 46
91 and 92
101 and 102
105 through 108
173 and 174
195 and 196
301 through 304
357 through 360
373 and 374
377 and 378
385 and 386
397 and 398

525 and 526	525 and 526
609 and 610	609 and 610
629 and 630	629 and 630
639 through 642	639 through 642
645 and 646	645 and 646
649 and 650	649 and 650
653 and 654	653 and 654
665 through 668	665 through 668
673 through 676	673 through 676
691 and 692	691 and 692
721 and 722	721 and 722
735 and 736	735 and 736
757 through 798	757 through 798

mable finishes, drying rooms, organic coatings and combustible storage or hydrogen fuel gas rooms, all of which are coordinated with the IFC. Unique consideration is taken for special use areas, such as covered mall buildings, motor-vehicle-related occupancies, special amusement buildings and aircraft-related occupancies. Special facilities within other occupancies are considered, such as stages and platforms, motion picture projection rooms, children's play structures and storm shelters. Finally, in order that the overall package of protection features can be easily understood, unique considerations for specific occupancies are addressed: Groups I-1, I-2, I-3, R-1, R-2, R-3, R-4, ambulatory care facilities and live/work units.

Chapter 5 General Building Heights and Areas. Chapter 5 contains the provisions that regulate the minimum type of construction for area limits and height limits based on the occupancy of the building. Height and area increases (including allowances for basements, mezzanines and equipment platforms) are permitted based on open frontage for fire department access, and the type of sprinkler protection provided and separation (Sections 503-506, 510). These thresholds are reduced for buildings over three stories in height in accordance with Sections 506.2.3 and 506.2.4. Provisions include the protection and/or separation of incidental uses (Table 509), accessory occupancies (Section 508.2) and mixed uses in the same building (Sections 506.2.2, 506.2.4, 508.3, 508.4 and 510). Unlimited area buildings are permitted in certain occupancies when they meet special provisions (Section 507).

Tables 504.3, 504.4 and 506.2 are the keystones in setting thresholds for building size based on the building's use and the materials with which it is constructed. If one then looks at Tables 504.3, 504.4 and 506.2, the relationship among group classification, allowable heights and areas and types of construction becomes apparent. Respective to each group classification, the greater the fire-resistance rating of structural elements, as represented by the type of construction, the greater the floor area and height allowances. The greater the potential fire hazards indicated as a function of the group, the lesser the height and area allowances for a particular construction type. In the 2015 edition, the table that once contained both height and area has been separated and these three new tables address the topics individually. In addition, the tables list criteria for buildings containing automatic sprinkler systems and those that do not.

Chapter 6 Types of Construction. The interdependence of these fire safety considerations can be seen by first looking at Tables 601 and 602, which show the fire-resistance ratings of the principal structural elements comprising a building in relation to the five classifications for types of construction. Type I construction is the classification that generally requires the highest fire-resistance ratings for structural elements, whereas Type V construction, which is designated as a combustible type of construction, generally requires the least amount of fire-resistance-rated structural elements. The greater the potential fire hazards indicated as a function of the group, the lesser the height and area allowances for a particular construction type. Section 603 includes a list of combustible elements that can be part of a noncombustible building (Types I and II construction).

Chapter 7 Fire and Smoke Protection Features. The provisions of Chapter 7 present the fundamental concepts of fire performance that all buildings are expected to achieve in some form. This chapter identifies the acceptable materials, techniques and methods by which proposed construction can be designed and evaluated against to determine a building's ability to limit the impact of fire. The fire-resistance-rated construction requirements within Chapter 7 provide passive resistance to the spread and effects of fire. Types of separations addressed include fire walls, fire barriers, fire partitions, horizontal assemblies, smoke barriers and smoke partitions. A fire produces heat that can weaken structural components and smoke products that cause property damage and place occupants at risk. The requirements of Chapter 7 work in unison with height and area requirements (Chapter 5), active fire detection and suppression systems (Chapter 9) and occupant egress requirements (Chapter 10) to contain a fire should it occur while helping ensure occupants are able to safely exit.

Chapter 8 Interior Finishes. This chapter contains the performance requirements for controlling fire growth within buildings by restricting interior finish and decorative materials. Past fire experience has shown that interior finish and decorative materials are key elements in the development and spread of fire. The provisions of Chapter 8 require materials used as interior finishes and decorations to meet certain flame-spread index or flame-propagation criteria based on the relative fire hazard associated with the occupancy. As smoke is also a hazard associated with fire, this chapter contains limits on the smoke development characteristics of interior finishes. The performance of the material is evaluated based on test standards.

Chapter 9 Fire Protection Systems. Chapter 9 prescribes the minimum requirements for active systems of fire protection equipment to perform the following functions: detect a fire; alert the occupants or fire department of a fire emergency; and control smoke and control or extinguish the fire. Generally, the requirements are based on the occupancy, the height and the area of the building, because these are the factors that most affect fire-fighting capabilities and the relative hazard of a specific building or portion thereof. This chapter parallels and is substantially duplicated in Chapter 9 of the *International Fire Code* (IFC); however, the IFC Chapter 9 also contains periodic testing criteria that are not contained in the IBC. In addition, the special fire protection system requirements based on use and occupancy found in IBC Chapter 4 are duplicated in IFC Chapter 9 as a user convenience.

Chapter 10 Means of Egress. The general criteria set forth in Chapter 10 regulating the design of the means of egress are established as the primary method for protection of people in buildings by allowing timely relocation or evacuation of building occupants. Both prescriptive and performance language is utilized in this chapter to provide for a basic approach in the determination of a safe exiting system for all occupancies. It addresses all portions of the egress system (i.e., exit access, exits and exit discharge) and includes design requirements as well as provisions regulating individual components. The requirements detail the size, arrangement, number and protection of means of egress components. Functional and operational characteristics also are specified for the components that will permit their safe use without special knowledge or effort. The means of egress protection requirements work in coordination with other sections of the code, such as protection of vertical openings (see Chapter 7), interior finish (see Chapter 8), fire suppression and detection systems (see Chapter 9) and numerous others, all having an impact on life safety. Chapter 10 of the IBC is duplicated in Chapter 10 of the IFC; however, the IFC contains one additional section on the means of egress system in existing buildings.

Chapter 11A - Housing Accessibility and/or Chapter 11B - Accessibility to Public Buildings, Public Accommodations, Commercial Buildings and Public Housing. Verify compliance with accessibility provisions. In order to be considered as accessible, buildings and their individual elements must comply with the applicable scoping and technical provisions of Chapter 11A and/or Chapter 11B.

Chapter 12 Interior Environment. Chapter 12 provides minimum standards for the interior environment of a building. The standards address the minimum sizes of spaces, minimum temperature levels, and minimum light and ventilation levels. The collection of requirements addresses limiting sound transmission through walls, ventilation of attic spaces and under floor spaces (crawl spaces). Finally, the chapter provides minimum standards for toilet and bathroom construction, including privacy shielding and standards for walls, partitions and floors to resist water intrusion and damage.

Chapter 13 Energy Efficiency. The purpose of Chapter 13 is to provide minimum design requirements that will promote efficient utilization of energy in buildings. The requirements are directed toward the design of building envelopes with adequate thermal resistance and low air leakage, and toward the design and selection of mechanical, water heating, electrical and illumina-

11B-224	Transient Lodging Guest Rooms, Housing at a Place of Education and Social Service Center Establishments.	532	11B-406	Curb Ramps, Blended Transitions and Islands.	558
11B-225	Storage	533	11B-407	Elevators	560
11B-226	Dining Surfaces and Work Surfaces.	534	11B-408	Limited-use/Limited-application Elevators . .	565
11B-227	Sales and Service	534	11B-409	Private Residence Elevators	566
11B-228	Depositories, Vending Machines, Change Machines, Mail Boxes, Fuel Dispensers and Electric Vehicle Charging Stations . .	534	11B-410	Platform Lifts	567
11B-229	Windows	535	11B-411	Destination-oriented Elevators.	567
11B-230	Two-way Communication Systems	535	<i>DIVISION 5 – GENERAL SITE AND BUILDING ELEMENTS</i>		
11B-231	Judicial Facilities.	535	11B-501	General	573
11B-232	Detention Facilities and Correctional Facilities.	536	11B-502	Parking Spaces	573
11B-233	Residential Facilities.	537	11B-503	Passenger Drop-off and Loading Zones. . . .	576
11B-234	Amusement Rides	538	11B-504	Stairways	577
11B-235	Recreational Boating Facilities	539	11B-505	Handrails.	577
11B-236	Exercise Machines and Equipment.	539	<i>DIVISION 6 – PLUMBING ELEMENTS AND FACILITIES</i>		
11B-237	Fishing Piers and Platforms	539	11B-601	General	580
11B-238	Golf Facilities	539	11B-602	Drinking Fountains.	580
11B-239	Miniature Golf Facilities.	539	11B-603	Toilet and Bathing Rooms	580
11B-240	Play Areas	539	11B-604	Water Closets and Toilet Compartments . . .	581
11B-241	Saunas and Steam Rooms	540	11B-605	Urinals	586
11B-242	Swimming Pools, Wading Pools, and Spas . .	540	11B-606	Lavatories and Sinks.	586
11B-243	Shooting Facilities with Firing Positions . . .	541	11B-607	Bathtubs	587
11B-244	Religious Facilities	541	11B-608	Shower Compartments	589
11B-245	Public Accommodations Located in Private Residences	541	11B-609	Grab Bars	591
11B-246	Outdoor Developed Areas.	541	11B-610	Seats	592
11B-247	Detectable Warnings and Detectable Directional Texture.	542	11B-611	Washing Machines and Clothes Dryers	593
			11B-612	Saunas and Steam Rooms.	593
<i>DIVISION 3 – BUILDING BLOCKS</i>			<i>DIVISION 7 – COMMUNICATION ELEMENTS AND FEATURES</i>		
11B-301	General	543	11B-701	General	594
11B-302	Floor or Ground Surfaces	543	11B-702	Fire Alarm Systems	594
11B-303	Changes in Level.	543	11B-703	Signs	594
11B-304	Turning Space.	543	11B-704	Telephones	600
11B-305	Clear Floor or Ground Space	544	11B-705	Detectable Warnings and Detectable Directional Texture.	600
11B-306	Knee and Toe Clearance	545	11B-706	Assistive Listening Systems.	602
11B-307	Protruding Objects	546	11B-707	Automatic Teller Machines, Fare Machines and Point-of-sale Devices.	602
11B-308	Reach ranges	547	11B-708	Two-way Communication Systems	604
11B-309	Operable Parts.	548	<i>DIVISION 8 – SPECIAL ROOMS, SPACES, AND ELEMENTS</i>		
11B-401	General	549	11B-801	General	605
11B-402	Accessible Routes	549	11B-802	Wheelchair Spaces, Companion Seats, and Designated Aisle Seats and Semi-ambulant Seats	605
11B-403	Walking Surfaces	549			
11B-404	Doors, Doorways, and Gates.	550			
11B-405	Ramps	557			

TABLE OF CONTENTS

11B-803	Dressing, Fitting, and Locker Rooms	606	1215	Reserved.	637
11B-804	Kitchens, Kitchenettes and Wet Bars	606	1216	Reserved.	637
11B-805	Medical Care and Long-term Care Facilities	608	1217	Reserved.	637
11B-806	Transient Lodging Guest Rooms	609	1218	Reserved.	637
11B-807	Holding Cells and Housing Cells	609	1219	Reserved.	637
11B-808	Courtrooms	610	1220	Reserved.	637
11B-809	Residential Dwelling Units	610	1221	Reserved.	637
11B-810	Transportation Facilities	611	1222	Reserved.	637
11B-811	Storage	612	1223	Reserved.	637
11B-812	Electric Vehicle Charging Stations	612	1224	[OSHPD 1] Hospitals.	638
<i>DIVISION 9 – BUILT-IN ELEMENTS</i>			1225	[OSHPD 2] Skilled Nursing and Intermediate-care Facilities	676
11B-901	General	615	1226	[OSHPD 3] Clinics	685
11B-902	Dining Surfaces and Work Surfaces	615	1227	[OSHPD 4] Correctional Treatment Centers	696
11B-903	Benches	615	1228	Reserved.	701
11B-904	Check-out Aisles and Sales and Service Counters	615	1229	Reserved.	701
<i>DIVISION 10 – RECREATION FACILITIES</i>			1230	[BSCC] Minimum Standards for Juvenile Facilities.	701
11B-1001	General	617	1231	[BSCC] Local Detention	705
11B-1002	Amusement Rides	617	1232	Reserved.	711
11B-1003	Recreational Boating Facilities	618	1233	Reserved.	711
11B-1004	Exercise Machines and Equipment	620	1234	Reserved.	711
11B-1005	Fishing Piers and Platforms	621	1235	[DPH] Sanitary Control of Shellfish (Plants and Operations)	711
11B-1006	Golf Facilities	621	1236	[DPH] Laboratory Animal Quarters	712
11B-1007	Miniature Golf Facilities	622	1237	[DPH] Wild Animal Quarantine Facilities.	712
11B-1008	Play Areas	622	1238	Reserved.	712
11B-1009	Swimming Pools, Wading Pools, and Spas.	624	1239	Reserved.	712
11B-1010	Shooting Facilities with Firing Positions	628	1240	[AGR] Meat and Poultry Processing Plants.	712
CHAPTER 12 INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT 631			1241	[AGR] Collection Centers and Facilities	714
Section			1242	[AGR] Renderers	714
1201	General	631	1243	[AGR] Horsemeat and Pet Food Establishments	714
1202	Definitions	631	1244	Reserved.	715
1203	Ventilation	631	1245	Reserved.	715
1204	Temperature Control	633	1246	Reserved.	715
1205	Lighting	634	1247	Reserved.	715
1206	Yards or Courts.	634	1248	Reserved.	715
1207	Sound Transmission	635	1249	Reserved.	715
1208	Interior Space Dimensions	635	1250	[CA] Pharmacies	715
1209	Access to Unoccupied Spaces	636	1251	[CA] Veterinary Facilities	716
1210	Toilet and Bathroom Requirements	636	1252	[CA] Barber Colleges and Shops.	716
1211	[HCD 1 & HCD 2] Garage Door Springs	637	1253	[CA] Schools of Cosmetology, Cosmetological Establishments and Satellite Classrooms.	716
1212	[HCD 1] Pollutant Control	637	1254	[CA] Acupuncture Offices	717
1213	Reserved.	637	CHAPTER 13 ENERGY EFFICIENCY 719		
1214	Reserved.	637			

CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

CHAPTER 1 – SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

(Matrix Adoption Tables are non-regulatory, intended only as an aid to the user.

See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC- CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHDPD				BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter																					
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																					
Adopt only those sections that are listed below	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X
Chapter / Section																					
Division I – <i>California Administration</i>																					
1.1	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X			X	X	X
1.2	X		X																		
1.2.3							X														
1.3			X											X							
1.4			X																X		
1.5 (Reserved)			X																		
1.6			X													X					
1.7			X												X						
1.8			X	X	X	X															
1.9			X																		
1.9.1 – 1.9.1.8							X														
1.9.2								X	X												
1.9.2.1								X													
1.9.2.2									X												
1.10			X																		
1.10.1										X											
1.10.2											X										
1.10.3												X									
1.10.4													X								
1.11			X																		
1.12			X																	X	
1.13 (Reserved)																					
1.14																					X
Division II – <i>Scope and Administration</i>																					
101.1 – 101.4.5							X			X	X	X	X								
101.4.7										X	X		X								
102.1								X	X	X	X	X	X								
102.2 – 102.4								X	X	X	X	X	X								
102.4.1								X	X												
102.4.3								X	X	X	X	X	X								
102.4.4								X	X	X	X	X	X								
102.5								X	X	X	X	X	X								
102.6 – 104.1										X	X	X	X								
104.2 – 104.4										X	X	X	X								
104.5 – 104.8										X	X	X	X								

(continued)

CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

CHAPTER 1 – SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION—continued

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC- CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD				BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter																					
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																					
Adopt only those sections that are listed below	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X
Chapter / Section																					
Division II – <i>Scope and Administration</i> -cont'd																					
104.9								X	X	X	X	X	X								
104.10								X	X	X	X	X	X								
104.11							X	X	X	X	X		X								
104.11.1 – 104.11.2										X	X	X	X								
104.11.3 – 104.11.4										X			X								
105.1										X	X	X	X								
105.1.1 – 105.2										X	X	X	X								
105.2 Building: 1-13				X	X																
105.2.1 – 105.2.2			X							X	X	X	X								
105.2.3										X	X	X	X								
105.3 – 105.3.1			X							X	X	X	X								
105.3.2										X	X		X								
105.4			X							X	X	X	X								
105.5										X	X	X	X								
105.6 – 105.7			X							X	X	X	X								
106.1			X					X	X	X	X	X	X								
106.1.1								X	X	X	X		X								
106.2 – 106.3			X							X	X	X	X								
107.1			X	X	X					X	X	X	X								
107.2.1				X	X																
107.2.3				X	X																
107.2.4				X	X																
107.2.5				X	X																
107.2.6				X	X																
107.2 – 107.3			X							X	X	X	X								
107.3.4.1										X	X		X								
107.4			X																		
107.5			X							X	X	X	X								
108.1 – 108.4			X							X	X	X	X								
109										X	X	X	X								
110.1 – 110.3			X							X	X	X	X								
110.3.1 – 110.3.3				X	X					X	X	X	X								
110.3.4 – 110.3.6			X	X	X					X	X	X	X								
110.3.4.1				X																	
110.3.8 – 110.3.10			X	X	X					X	X	X	X								
110.3.10.1				X	X																
110.3.10.2				X																	
110.4 – 110.6			X							X	X	X	X								
111.1			X							X	X	X	X								
111.2			X				X			X	X	X	X								
111.3 – 111.4			X							X	X	X	X								
112			X							X	X	X	X								
113										X	X	X	X								
114.1 – 114.2			X							X	X	X	X								
114.2 – 114.3										X	X	X	X								
115 - 116			X							X	X	X	X								

CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

CHAPTER 2 – DEFINITIONS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are non-regulatory, intended only as an aid to the user.

See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHDPD				BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter	X																				
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X		X								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below							X					X		X	X						
Chapter / Section																					
201.3			X	X	X	X															
201.4			X																		
202			X	X	X	X															
Access Aisle							X														
Accessibility				X	X	X	X														
Accessibility Function Button							X														
Accessible				X	X	X	X														
Accessible Element							X														
Accessible Means of Egress							X														
Accessible Route				X	X	X	X														
Accessible Space				X	X	X	X														
Active Equipment/Component								X	X	X	X	X	X								
Adaptable							X														
Adaptable Dwelling Unit						X															
Addition (2nd paragraph only)							X														
Adjusted Construction Cost							X														
Administrative Authority							X														
Aged Home or Institution			X																		
Aisle (2nd paragraph only)							X														
Alteration							X														
Alternative System										X			X								
Amusement Attraction							X														
Amusement Ride							X														
Amusement Ride Seat							X														
ANSI							X														
Approved (with notes)				X	X	X															
Approved (2nd paragraph only) (w/o notes)							X														
Approved Agency				X	X			X	X												
Approved Listing Agency				X	X																
Approved Testing Agency				X	X		X														
Area of Refuge							X														
Area of Sport Activity							X														
Assembly Area							X														
Assistive Device						X															
Assistive Listening System (ALS)							X														
Automatic Door				X	X	X	X														
Automatic Teller Machine (ATM)							X														
Auxiliary Area															X						
Backwash															X						
Bather															X						
Bathroom						X	X														

(continued)

CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

CHAPTER 2 – DEFINITIONS—continued

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC- CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHDPD				BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter	X																				
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X		X								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below							X					X		X	X						
Chapter / Section																					
<i>Bedridden Person</i>			X																		
<i>Blended Transition</i>							X														
<i>Boarding Pier</i>							X														
<i>Boat Launch Ramp</i>							X														
<i>Boat Slip</i>							X														
Building			X																		
Building (with exception)				X	X	X															
Building (w/o notes)							X														
<i>Building Entrance on an Accessible Route</i>						X															
<i>Building, Existing</i>				X	X																
Building Official							X														
<i>Care and Supervision</i>			X																		
<i>Carriage Unit</i>						X															
<i>Catastrophically Injured</i>			X																		
<i>Catch Pool</i>							X														
CCR							X														
<i>CDF Director</i>			X																		
Cell			X																		
<i>Cell Complex</i>			X																		
<i>Cell Tiers</i>			X																		
<i>Cellular Concrete</i>				X	X																
<i>Central Control Building</i>			X																		
<i>Characters</i>				X	X	X	X														
<i>Charter School</i>			X																		
<i>Child-Care Center</i>			X																		
<i>Child or Children</i>			X																		
<i>Children's Use</i>							X														
<i>Chronically Ill</i>			X																		
Circulation Path							X														
<i>Clean Pool Water</i>															X						
<i>Clear</i>							X														
<i>Clear Floor Space</i>						X	X														
<i>Clear Pool Water</i>															X						
<i>Clinic, Outpatient</i>			X																		
<i>Closed-Circuit Telephone</i>							X														
Commercial Facilities							X														
Common Use				†	†	†	X														

(continued)

CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

CHAPTER 2 – DEFINITIONS—continued

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC- CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHDPD				BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter	X																				
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X		X								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below							X					X		X	X						
Chapter / Section																					
Common Use Areas						X															
Community Care Facility			X																		
Comply With							X														
Concrete, Cellular				X	X	X															
Congregate Living Health Facility (CLHF)			X																		
Congregate Residence			X			X															
Corrosion Resistant															X						
Courtroom Dock			X																		
Courthouse Holding Facility [SFM]			X																		
Covered Multifamily Dwellings						X															
Cross Slope						X	X														
Curb Cut				X	X	X	X														
Curb Ramp				X	X	X	X														
Day-Care			X																		
Day-Care Home, Family			X																		
Day-Care Home, Large Family			X																		
Day-Care Home, Small Family			X																		
Day Room			X																		
Deck															X						
Department				X	X																
Designated Public Transportation							X														
Destination-Oriented Elevator							X														
Detached Single-Family Dwelling				X	X																
Detectable Warning				X	X	X	X														
Detention Elevator [SFM]			X																		
Detention Treatment Room [SFM]			X																		
Detoxification Facilities			X																		
Directional Sign				X	X		X														
Disability							X														
Dormitory			X				X														
Dormitory [SFM]			X																		
Drain															X						
Drive-up Electric Vehicle Charging Station							X														
Dwelling Unit						X															
Effective Particle Size															X						
Efficiency Dwelling Unit				X																	
Electric Vehicle			X																		
Electric Vehicle (EV)							X														
Electric Vehicle (EV) Charger							X														
Electric Vehicle Charging Space (EV Space)							X														
Electric Vehicle Charging Station (EVCS)							X														
Electric Vehicle (EV) Connector							X														
Element							X														

(continued)

CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

CHAPTER 2 – DEFINITIONS—continued

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC- CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD				BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter	X																				
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X		X								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below							X					X		X	X						
Chapter / Section																					
Elevated Play Component							X														
Elevator, Passenger				X	X		X														
Employee Work Area							X														
Enforcement				X	X																
Enforcement Agent								X	X	X			X								
Enforcing Agency			X	X	X		X			X	X	X	X		X						
Entrance				X	X	X	X														
Equipment Area															X						
Equivalent Facilitation						X	X														
Existing Building or Facility							X														
Exit							X														
Exterior Covering			X																		
Facility							X														
Family				X																	
Fire Appliance			X																		
Fire Hazard Severity Zones			X																		
Fire Protection Plan			X																		
Fire-Retardant Treated Wood			X																		
Fire-Smoke Barrier			X																		
Fireworks			X																		
Foster Care Facilities			X																		
Foster Family Home			X																		
Freestanding Acute Psychiatric Building (APB)										X											
Freestanding Skilled Nursing Building (SNB)										X											
Full-Time Care			X																		
Functional Area							X														
Gangway							X														
General Acute Care Building (GAC Building)										X											
Golf Car Passage							X														
Grab Bar				X	X	X	X														
Grade (Adjacent Ground Elevation)						X	X														
Grade Break							X														
Ground Floor						X	X														
Ground Level Play Component							X														
Group Home			X																		
Guard (or Guardrail)				X	X	X	X														

(continued)

CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

CHAPTER 2 – DEFINITIONS—continued

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC- CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHDPD				BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter	X																				
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X		X								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below							X					X		X	X						
Chapter / Section																					
<i>Hall Call Console</i>							X														
Handrail							X														
<i>Handwashing Fixture</i>										X	X	X	X								
<i>Hazardous Substance</i>			X																		
<i>Health Care Provider</i>							X														
<i>Heavy Timber</i>			X																		
High-Rise Building			X																		
<i>High-Rise Building Access</i>			X																		
Historic Buildings							X														
<i>Holding Facility</i>			X																		
Hospitals and Psychiatric Hospitals			X																		
<i>Hotel or Motel</i>				X	X																
<i>Housing at a Place of Education</i>						X	X														
Housing Unit			X																		
<i>If, If... Then</i>							X														
<i>Ignition-Resistant Material</i>			X																		
<i>Incidental Structural Alterations, Additions or Repairs</i>										X	X		X								
<i>Infant</i>			X																		
Intended to be occupied as a Residence				†	†	†															
<i>Inlet</i>															X						
<i>International Symbol of Accessibility</i>						X	X														
<i>Key Station</i>							X														
<i>Kick Plate</i>				X	X	X	X														
<i>Kitchen or Kitchenette</i>							X														
Labeled				X	X																
Laboratory [SFM]			X																		
Laboratory Suite [SFM]			X																		
Ladder															X						
Lavatory						X	X														
Level Area						X															
Licensing Agency										X											
<i>Lift, Platform (Wheelchair)</i>						X															
<i>Liquid Tight Floor [SFM]</i>			X																		
Listed			X	X	X																
<i>Listing Agency</i>				X	X																
Lobby			X	X	X																
<i>Local Agency Very High Fire Hazard Severity Zone</i>			X																		
Lodging House				X		X															
Log Wall Construction			X																		
Mail Boxes							X														

(continued)

CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

CHAPTER 2 – DEFINITIONS—continued

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC- CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHDPD				BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter	X																				
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X		X								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below							X					X		X	X						
Chapter / Section																					
Major Structural Alterations, Additions or Repairs										X	X		X								
Marked Crossing				X	X	X	X														
May							X														
Medical Pool															X						
Mezzanine							X														
Minor Structural Alteration, Additions or Repairs										X	X		X								
Monolithic										X											
Monolithic Ceiling										X											
Motel				X	X																
Motion Picture and Television Production Studio Sound Stage, Approved Production Facilities and Production Locations			X																		
Multi-bedroom Housing Unit							X														
Multilevel Assembly Seating				†	†	†															
Multistory Dwelling Unit						X															
Multistory Unit				†	†	†															
Newly Constructed						X															
Next Generation Attenuation (NGA)								X	X	X			X								
NFPA							X														
Non-General Acute Care Building (Non-GAC Building)										X											
Nonambulatory Persons			X																		
Noncombustible			X																		
Normal				X	X																
Nosing							X														
NPC 1, NPC 2, NPC 3/NPC 3R, NPC 4 and NPC 5										X											
Nursing Homes			X																		
Occupant Load							X														
Occupiable Space							X														
Open Riser				X	X	X	X														
Operable Part				X	X	X	X														
Organized Camps			X																		
Overflow System															X						
Passage Door						X															
Passenger Elevator				X	X		X														
Passive Solar Energy Collector				X	X																
Path of Travel							X														
Pedestrian						X	X														
Pedestrian Way				X	X	X	X														

(continued)

CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

CHAPTER 2 – DEFINITIONS—continued

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC- CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHDPD				BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter	X																				
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X		X								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below							X					X		X	X						
Chapter / Section																					
<i>Permanent</i>							X														
<i>Permanent Portable Building</i>			X																		
<i>Permit</i>							X														
<i>Persons with Intellectual Disabilities, Profoundly or Severly</i>			X																		
<i>Persons with Disabilities</i>						X															
<i>Pictogram</i>				X	X	X	X														
<i>Place of Public Accommodation</i>				X	X	X	X														
<i>Platform</i>							X														
<i>Platform (Wheelchair) Lift</i>				X	X	X	X														
<i>Play Area</i>							X														
<i>Play Component</i>							X														
<i>Point-of-Sale Device</i>							X														
<i>Pool</i>															X						
<i>Pool User</i>															X						
<i>Pool Volume</i>															X						
<i>Powder Room</i>				X	X	X	X														
<i>Power-Assisted Door</i>							X														
<i>Primary Entry</i>						X															
<i>Primary-Entry Level</i>						X															
<i>Private Building or Facility</i>							X														
<i>Private Pool</i>															X						
<i>Professional Office of a Health Care Provider</i>							X														
<i>Protective Social Care Facility</i>			X																		
<i>Public Building or Facility</i>							X														
<i>Public Entity</i>						X	X														
<i>Public Entrance</i>							X														
<i>Public Housing</i>						X	X														
<i>Public Pool</i>															X						
<i>Public Use</i>							X														
<i>Public-Use Areas</i>						X	X														
<i>Public Way</i>							X														
<i>Qualified Historic Building or Facility</i>							X														
<i>Raftertail</i>			X																		
<i>Ramp</i>							X														

(continued)

CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

CHAPTER 2 – DEFINITIONS—continued

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHDPD				BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter	X																				
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X		X								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below							X					X		X	X						
Chapter / Section																					
<i>Reasonable Portion</i>							X														
<i>Recessed Steps</i>															X						
<i>Recessed Treads</i>															X						
<i>Recirculation System</i>															X						
<i>Recommend</i>				X	X		X														
<i>Relocatable Building (Public School)</i>			X																		
<i>Remodeling</i>							X														
<i>Repair</i>							X			X			X								
<i>Residential Care Facility for the Chronically Ill (RCF/CI)</i>			X																		
<i>Residential Care Facility for the Elderly (RCFE)</i>			X																		
<i>Residential Dwelling Unit</i>							X														
<i>Residential Facility (RF)</i>			X																		
<i>Restraint</i>			X																		
<i>Restricted Area</i>										X											
<i>Restricted Entrance</i>							X														
<i>Retrofit</i>								X	X	X	X		X								
<i>Riser</i>				X	X	X	X														
<i>Roof Eave</i>			X																		
<i>Roof Eave Soffit</i>			X																		
<i>Rugged Equipment</i>								X	X	X	X	X	X								
<i>Running Slope</i>				X	X	X	X														
<i>Sanitary Facility</i>				X		X															
<i>Secure Interview Rooms</i>			X																		
<i>Self-Service Storage</i>							X														
<i>Service Entrance</i>							X														
<i>Shall</i>							X														
<i>Shallow Pool</i>															X						
<i>Shopping Center (or Shopping Mall)</i>							X														
<i>Should</i>				X	X		X														
<i>Sidewalk</i>				X	X	X	X														
<i>Sign</i>							X														
<i>Significant Loss of Function</i>								X	X	X	X		X								
<i>Single-Accommodation Sanitary Facility</i>						X															
<i>Sink</i>						X	X														
<i>Site</i>							X														
<i>Site Development</i>						X															
<i>Sleeping Accommodations</i>				X	X	X	X														
<i>Slip Resistant</i>															X						
<i>Slope</i>						X															

(continued)

CHAPTER 2

DEFINITIONS

User note: Code change proposals to sections preceded by the designation [A], [BS] or [F] will be considered by one of the code development committees meeting during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page ix.

SECTION 201 GENERAL

201.1 Scope. Unless otherwise expressly stated, the following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this code, have the meanings shown in this chapter.

201.2 Interchangeability. Words used in the present tense include the future; words stated in the masculine gender include the feminine and neuter; the singular number includes the plural and the plural, the singular.

201.3 Terms defined in other codes. Where terms are not defined in this code and are defined in the *California Energy Code*, *California Fire Code*, *California Mechanical Code*, *California Residential Code*, *California Existing Building Code*, *California Green Building Standards Code*, *California Electrical Code* or *California Plumbing Code*, such terms shall have the meanings ascribed to them as in those codes.

201.4 Terms not defined. Where terms are not defined through the methods authorized by this section, such terms shall have ordinarily accepted meanings such as the context implies.

For applications listed in Section 1.11 regulated by the Office of the State Fire Marshal, where terms are not defined through the methods authorized by this section, such terms shall have ordinarily accepted meanings such as the context implies. Webster's Third New International Dictionary of the English Language, Unabridged, shall be considered as providing ordinarily accepted meanings.

SECTION 202 DEFINITIONS

24-HOUR BASIS. The actual time that a person is an occupant within a facility for the purpose of receiving care. It shall not include a facility that is open for 24 hours and is capable of providing care to someone visiting the facility during any segment of the 24 hours.

[BS] AAC MASONRY. Masonry made of autoclaved aerated concrete (AAC) units, manufactured without internal reinforcement and bonded together using thin- or thick-bed mortar.

ACCESS AISLE. [DSA-AC]. An accessible pedestrian space adjacent to or between parking spaces that provides clearances in compliance with this code.

> **ACCESSIBILITY. [DSA-AC & HCD 1-AC]** The combination of various elements in a building, facility, site, or area, or portion thereof which allows access, circulation and the full use of the building and facilities by persons with disabilities in compliance with this code.

ACCESSIBILITY FUNCTION BUTTON. [DSA-AC] A button on an elevator hall call console in a destination-oriented elevator system that when pressed will activate a series of visual and verbal prompts and announcements providing instruction regarding hall call console operation and direction to an assigned elevator.

ACCESSIBLE. [DSA-AC & HCD 1-AC] A site, building, facility, or portion thereof that is approachable and usable by persons with disabilities in compliance with this code.

ACCESSIBLE ELEMENT. [DSA-AC] An element specified by the regulations adopted by the Division of the State Architect-Access Compliance.

ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS. A continuous and unobstructed way of egress travel from any accessible point in a building or facility to a public way.

ACCESSIBLE ROUTE. [DSA-AC & HCD 1-AC] A continuous unobstructed path connecting accessible elements and spaces of an accessible site, building or facility that can be negotiated by a person with a disability using a wheelchair, and that is also safe for and usable by persons with other disabilities. Interior accessible routes may include corridors, hallways, floors, ramps, elevators and lifts. Exterior accessible routes may include parking access aisles, curb ramps, crosswalks at vehicular ways, walks, ramps and lifts.

ACCESSIBLE SPACE. [DSA-AC & HCD 1-AC] A space that complies with the accessibility provisions of this code.

ACCREDITATION BODY. An approved, third-party organization that is independent of the grading and inspection agencies, and the lumber mills, and that initially accredits and subsequently monitors, on a continuing basis, the competency and performance of a grading or inspection agency related to carrying out specific tasks.

ACTIVE EQUIPMENT/COMPONENT. [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC & OSHPD 1, 2, 3 & 4] Equipment/Component containing moving or rotating parts, electrical parts such as switches or relays, or other internal components that are sensitive to earthquake forces and critical to the function of the equipment.

ADAPTABLE. [DSA-AC] Capable of being readily modified and made accessible.

ADAPTABLE DWELLING UNIT. [HCD 1-AC] An accessible dwelling unit within a covered multifamily building as designed with elements and spaces allowing the dwelling unit to be adapted or adjusted to accommodate the user. See Chapter 11A, Division IV.

[A] ADDITION. An extension or increase in floor area or height of a building or structure. *[DSA-AC]* An expansion,

DEFINITIONS

extension or increase in the gross floor area or height of a building or facility.

[BS] ADHERED MASONRY VENEER. Veneer secured and supported through the adhesion of an approved bonding material applied to an approved backing.

ADJUSTED CONSTRUCTION COST. [DSA-AC] *All costs directly related to the construction of a project, including labor, material, equipment, services, utilities, contractor financing, contractor overhead and profit, and construction management costs. The costs shall not be reduced by the value of components, assemblies, building equipment or construction not directly associated with accessibility or usability. The adjusted construction cost shall not include: project management fees and expenses, architectural and engineering fees, testing and inspection fees, and utility connection or service district fees.*

ADMINISTRATIVE AUTHORITY. [DSA-AC] *A governmental agency that adopts or enforces regulations and guidelines for the design, construction or alteration of buildings and facilities.*

[BS] ADOBE CONSTRUCTION. Construction in which the exterior load-bearing and nonload-bearing walls and partitions are of unfired clay masonry units, and floors, roofs and interior framing are wholly or partly of wood or other approved materials.

Adobe, stabilized. Unfired clay masonry units to which admixtures, such as emulsified asphalt, are added during the manufacturing process to limit the units' water absorption so as to increase their durability.

Adobe, unstabilized. Unfired clay masonry units that do not meet the definition of "Adobe, stabilized."

[F] AEROSOL. A product that is dispensed from an aerosol container by a propellant. Aerosol products shall be classified by means of the calculation of their chemical heats of combustion and shall be designated Level 1, Level 2 or Level 3.

Level 1 aerosol products. Those with a total chemical heat of combustion that is less than or equal to 8,600 British thermal units per pound (Btu/lb) (20 kJ/g).

Level 2 aerosol products. Those with a total chemical heat of combustion that is greater than 8,600 Btu/lb (20 kJ/g), but less than or equal to 13,000 Btu/lb (30 kJ/g).

Level 3 aerosol products. Those with a total chemical heat of combustion that is greater than 13,000 Btu/lb (30 kJ/g).

[F] AEROSOL CONTAINER. A metal can or a glass or plastic bottle designed to dispense an aerosol.

AGED HOME OR INSTITUTION. *A facility used for the housing of persons 65 years of age or older in need of care and supervision. (See definition of "care and supervision")*

[BS] AGGREGATE. In roofing, crushed stone, crushed slag or water-worn gravel used for surfacing for roof coverings.

AGRICULTURAL BUILDING. A structure designed and constructed to house farm implements, hay, grain, poultry, livestock or other horticultural products. This structure shall not be a place of human habitation or a place of employment

where agricultural products are processed, treated or packaged, nor shall it be a place used by the public.

AIR-IMPERMEABLE INSULATION. An insulation having an air permeance equal to or less than $0.02 \text{ l/s} \times \text{m}^2$ at 75 pa pressure differential tested in accordance with ASTM E2178 or ASTM E283.

AIR-INFLATED STRUCTURE. A structure that uses air-pressurized membrane beams, arches or other elements to enclose space. Occupants of such a structure do not occupy the pressurized area used to support the structure.

AIR-SUPPORTED STRUCTURE. A structure wherein the shape of the structure is attained by air pressure and occupants of the structure are within the elevated pressure area. Air-supported structures are of two basic types:

Double skin. Similar to a single skin, but with an attached liner that is separated from the outer skin and provides an airspace which serves for insulation, acoustic, aesthetic or similar purposes.

Single skin. Where there is only the single outer skin and the air pressure is directly against that skin.

AISLE. An unenclosed exit access component that defines and provides a path of egress travel. **[DSA-AC]** *A circulation path between objects such as seats, tables, merchandise, equipment, displays, shelves, desks, etc., that provides clearances in compliance with this code.*

AISLE ACCESSWAY. That portion of an exit access that leads to an aisle.

[F] ALARM NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE. A fire alarm system component such as a bell, horn, speaker, light or text display that provides audible, tactile or visible outputs, or any combination thereof.

[F] ALARM SIGNAL. A signal indicating an emergency requiring immediate action, such as a signal indicative of fire.

[F] ALARM VERIFICATION FEATURE. A feature of automatic fire detection and alarm systems to reduce unwanted alarms wherein smoke detectors report alarm conditions for a minimum period of time, or confirm alarm conditions within a given time period, after being automatically reset, in order to be accepted as a valid alarm-initiation signal.

ALLOWABLE STRESS DESIGN. A method of proportioning structural members, such that elastically computed stresses produced in the members by nominal loads do not exceed specified allowable stresses (also called "working stress design").

[A] ALTERATION. Any construction or renovation to an existing structure other than repair or addition. **[DSA-AC]** *A change, addition or modification in construction, change in occupancy or use, or structural repair to an existing building or facility. Alterations include, but are not limited to, remodeling, renovation, rehabilitation, reconstruction, historic restoration, resurfacing of circulation paths or vehicular ways, changes or rearrangement of the structural parts or elements, and changes or rearrangement in the plan configuration of walls and full-height partitions. Normal maintenance, reroofing, painting or wallpapering, or changes to mechanical and*

CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE CHAPTER 3 – USE AND OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION

(Matrix Adoption Tables are non-regulatory, intended only as an aid to the user.

See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHDPD				BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter	X							X	X	X	X		X								
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X																
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																			X		
Chapter / Section																					
302.1			X	X	X																
302.1.3																			X		
303.1			X																		
303.2			X																		
303.7			X																		
303.8			X																		
304.1			X																		
305.1			X																		
305.2			X																		
305.2.1			X																		
306.2			X																		
Table 307.1(1)			X																		
Table 307.1(2)			X																		
307.1.1			X																		
308.1			X																		
308.3			X	†	†																
308.4			X																		
308.4.2			X																		
308.5			X																		
308.5.6			X																		
308.5.7			X																		
308.5.8			X																		
308.6			X																		
308.6.1			X																		
308.6.1.1			X																		
310.1			X																		
310.2			X																		
310.3			X	X																	
310.4			X	X																	
310.4.1			X																		
310.5			X	X																	
310.5.1			X																		
310.6			X																		
310.7			X																		
313			X																		
314			X																		

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

provided to permit movement from sleeping units, activity spaces and other occupied areas within the smoke compartment to other smoke compartments.

308.5.6 Condition 6. *This occupancy condition shall include buildings containing only one temporary holding facility with five or less persons under restraint or security where the building is protected throughout with a monitored automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and where the temporary holding facility is protected throughout with an automatic fire alarm system with notification appliances. A Condition 6 building shall be permitted to be classified as a Group B occupancy.*

308.5.7 Condition 7. *This occupancy condition shall include buildings containing only one temporary holding facility with nine or less persons under restraint or security where limited to the first or second story, provided the building complies with Section 408.1.2.6. A Condition 7 building shall be permitted to be classified as a Group B occupancy.*

308.5.8 Condition 8. *This occupancy condition shall include buildings containing not more than four secure interview rooms located within the same fire area where not more than six occupants under restraint are located in the same fire area. A Condition 8 building shall be permitted to be classified as a Group B occupancy, provided the requirements in Section 408.1.2.7 are met.*

308.6 Institutional Group I-4, day care facilities. This group shall include buildings and structures occupied by more than six clients of any age who receive custodial care for fewer than 24 hours per day by persons other than parents or guardians, relatives by blood, marriage or adoption, and in a place other than the home of the clients cared for. This group shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- Adult day care
- Child day care

308.6.1 Classification as Group E. A child day care facility that provides care for more than six but no more than 100 children under 2 years of age, where the rooms in which the children are cared for are located on a level of exit discharge serving such rooms and each of these child care rooms has an exit door directly to the exterior, shall be classified as Group E.

308.6.1.1 Special provisions. *See Section 452.1.4 for daycares located above or below the first story.*

SECTION 309 MERCANTILE GROUP M

309.1 Mercantile Group M. Mercantile Group M occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure or a portion thereof, for the display and sale of merchandise and involves stocks of goods, wares or merchandise incidental to such purposes and accessible to the public. Mercantile occupancies shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- Department stores
- Drug stores

- Markets
- Motor fuel-dispensing facilities
- Retail or wholesale stores
- Sales rooms

309.2 Quantity of hazardous materials. The aggregate quantity of nonflammable solid and nonflammable or non-combustible liquid hazardous materials stored or displayed in a single control area of a Group M occupancy shall not exceed the quantities in Table 414.2.5(1).

SECTION 310 RESIDENTIAL GROUP R

310.1 Residential Group R. Residential Group R includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, for sleeping purposes when not classified as an Institutional Group I or when not regulated by the *California Residential Code*.

310.2 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

AGED HOME OR INSTITUTION.
BEDRIDDEN PERSON.
BOARDING HOUSE.
CARE AND SUPERVISION.
CATASTROPHICALLY INJURED.
CHILD-CARE CENTER.
CHILD OR CHILDREN.
CHRONICALLY ILL.
CONGREGATE LIVING HEALTH FACILITY (CLHF).
CONGREGATE RESIDENCE.
DAY CARE.
DAY-CARE HOME, FAMILY.
DAY-CARE HOME, LARGE FAMILY.
DAY-CARE HOME, SMALL FAMILY.
DORMITORY.
FULL-TIME CARE.
GROUP HOME.
GUEST ROOM.
INFANT.
LODGING HOUSE.
NONAMBULATORY PERSONS.
PERSONS WITH INTELLECTUAL DISABILITIES, PROFOUNDLY OR SEVERELY.
RESIDENTIAL CARE FACILITY FOR THE CHRONICALLY ILL (RCF/CI).
RESIDENTIAL CARE FACILITY FOR THE ELDERLY (RCFE).
RESIDENTIAL FACILITY (RF).
TERMINALLY ILL.
TRANSIENT.

310.3 Residential Group R-1. Residential occupancies containing sleeping units where the occupants are primarily transient in nature, including:

- Boarding houses (transient) with more than 10 occupants
- Congregate residents (transient) with more than 10 occupants

Hotels (transient)
Motels (transient)

[HCD 1] Efficiency dwelling units (transient)

310.4 Residential Group R-2. Residential occupancies containing sleeping units or more than two dwelling units where the occupants are primarily permanent in nature, including:

Apartment houses
Boarding houses (nontransient) with more than 16 occupants
Congregate residences (nontransient) with more than 16 occupants
Convents
Dormitories
Fraternities and sororities
Hotels (nontransient)
Live/work units
Monasteries
Motels (nontransient)
Vacation timeshare properties

[HCD 1] Efficiency dwelling units (nontransient)

310.4.1 Residential Group R-2.1. Residential Group R-2.1 occupancies shall include buildings, structures or parts thereof housing clients, on a 24-hour basis, who because of age, mental disability or other reasons, live in a supervised residential environment that provides personal care services.

This occupancy may contain more than six nonambulatory and/or bedridden clients. (See Section 435 Special Provisions for Licensed 24-Hour Care Facilities in a Group R-2.1, R-3.1 or R-4 Occupancy). This group shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Assisted living facilities such as:
Residential care facilities,
Residential care facilities for the elderly (RCFEs),
Adult residential facilities,
Congregate living health facilities,
Group homes,
Residential care facilities for the chronically ill,
Congregate living health facilities for the terminally ill.
Social rehabilitation facilities such as:
Halfway houses,
Community correctional centers,
Community correction reentry centers,
Community treatment programs,
Work furlough programs,
Alcoholism or drug abuse recovery or treatment facilities.

310.5 Residential Group R-3. Residential Group R-3 occupancies where the occupants are primarily permanent in nature and not classified as Group R-1, R-2, R-2.1, R-3.1, R-4 or I, including:

Buildings that do not contain more than two dwelling units
Boarding houses (nontransient) with 16 or fewer occupants
Boarding houses (transient) with 10 or fewer occupants
Congregate residences (nontransient) with 16 or fewer occupants

Congregate residences (transient) with 10 or fewer occupants
[HCD 1] Efficiency dwelling units

Adult care facilities that provide accommodations for six or fewer clients of any age for less than 24 hours.
Licensing categories that may use this classification include Adult Day Programs.

Alcoholism or drug abuse recovery homes
(ambulatory only)

Child care facilities that provide accommodations for six or fewer clients of any age for less than 24 hours.
Licensing categories that may use this classification include, but are not limited to:

Day-Care Center for Mildly Ill Children,
Infant Care Center,
School Age Child Day-Care Center.

Family Day-Care Homes that provide accommodations for 14 or fewer children, in the provider's own home for less than 24-hours.

Foster family homes (ambulatory only)

Adult care and child care facilities that are within a single family home are permitted to comply with the California Residential Code.

Lodging houses with five or fewer guest rooms

310.5.1 Residential Group R-3.1. This occupancy group may include facilities licensed by a governmental agency for a residentially based 24-hour care facility providing accommodations for six or fewer clients of any age. Clients may be classified as ambulatory, nonambulatory or bedridden. A Group R-3.1 occupancy shall meet the requirements for construction as defined for Group R-3, except as otherwise provided for in Section 435 Special Provisions For Licensed 24-Hour Care Facilities in a Group R-2.1, R-3.1 or R-4 Occupancy. This group may include:

Adult residential facilities
Congregate living health facilities
Foster family homes
Group homes
Intermediate care facilities for the developmentally disabled habilitative
Intermediate care facilities for the developmentally disabled nursing
Nurseries for the full-time care of children under the age of six, but not including "infants" as defined in Section 310
Residential care facilities for the elderly
Small family homes and residential care facilities for the chronically ill

Exception: Group Homes licensed by the Department of Social Services which provide nonmedical board, room and care for six or fewer ambulatory children or children two years of age or younger, and which do not have any nonambulatory clients shall not be subject to regulations found in Section 435.

Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13143 with respect to these exempted facilities, no city, county or pub-

CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

CHAPTER 4 – SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS ON USE AND OCCUPANCY

(Matrix Adoption Tables are non-regulatory, intended only as an aid to the user.

See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHDP				BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter	X							X	X	X	X		X								
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X																
Adopt only those sections that are listed below						X	X					X								X	
Chapter / Section																					
403			X																		
403.1			X																		
403.1.1			X																		
403.2.1			X																		
403.2.1.1			X																		
403.3			X																		
403.3.1			X																		
403.3.2			X																		
403.3.2.1			X																		
403.3.3			X																		
403.3.5			X																		
403.4.7			X																		
403.4.7.1			X																		
403.4.8.1			X																		
403.5.3			X																		
403.5.4			X																		
403.6			X																		
403.7			X																		
404.5			X																		
404.6			X																		
404.11			X																		
406.3.1			X																		
406.3.2						X															
406.3.6				X	X																
406.4.1						X	X														
406.6.2			X																		
406.9			X																		
406.9.1			X																		
406.9.2			X																		
406.9.3			X																		
407.1			X																		
407.2			X																		
407.2.1			X																		
407.2.2			X																		
407.2.3			X																		
407.2.5			X																		
407.2.6			X																		
407.3			X																		
407.3.1			X																		
407.3.1.1			X																		
407.3.2			X																		
407.4			X																		
407.4.1			X																		
407.4.1.1			X																		
407.4.1.2			X																		
407.4.2			X																		
407.4.3			X																		
407.4.4			X																		

(continued)

CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

CHAPTER 4 – SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS ON USE AND OCCUPANCY—continued

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHDPD				BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter	X							X	X	X	X		X								
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X																
Adopt only those sections that are listed below						X	X					X								X	
Chapter / Section																					
407.4.4.2			X																		
407.4.4.3			X																		
407.4.4.3.1			X																		
407.4.4.3.2			X																		
407.4.4.5			X																		
407.4.4.5.1			X																		
407.4.4.5.3			X																		
407.4.4.6.1			X																		
407.4.4.6.2			X																		
407.5			X																		
407.5.2			X																		
407.6			X																		
407.6.1			X																		
407.8			X																		
407.9			X																		
407.10			X																		
407.11			X																		
407.11.1			X																		
407.11.2			X																		
407.11.3			X																		
407.11.4			X																		
408.1.1			X																		
408.1.2			X																		
408.1.2.1			X																		
408.1.2.2			X																		
408.1.2.3			X																		
408.1.2.4			X																		
408.1.2.5			X																		
408.1.2.6			X																		
408.1.2.7			X																		
408.2			X																		
408.2.1			X																		
408.3.1.1			X																		
408.3.6			X																		
408.3.6.1			X																		
408.3.6.2			X																		
408.3.6.3			X																		
408.3.6.4			X																		
408.3.6.5			X																		
408.3.8.1			X																		
408.3.9			X																		
408.3.10			X																		
408.3.11			X																		
408.4			X																		

(continued)

CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
CHAPTER 4 – SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS ON USE AND OCCUPANCY—continued

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD				BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter	X							X	X	X	X		X								
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X																
Adopt only those sections that are listed below						X	X					X								X	
Chapter / Section																					
408.4.3			X																		
408.5.1			X																		
408.6			X																		
408.6.1			X																		
408.8			X																		
408.8.1			X																		
408.9			X																		
408.9.1			X																		
408.12			X																		
408.13			X																		
408.14			X																		
408.15			X																		
408.15.1			X																		
408.15.2			X																		
408.15.3			X																		
408.15.3.1			X																		
408.15.3.2			X																		
408.15.4			X																		
408.15.5			X																		
410.3.6			X																		
412.3.8							X														
414.1.1			X																		
414.5			X																		
414.5.4			X																		
415.12			X																		
415.12.1			X																		
415.12.1.1			X																		
415.12.1.2			X																		
415.12.1.3			X																		
415.12.1.4			X																		
415.12.1.5			X																		
415.13			X																		
415.13.1			X																		
415.13.2			X																		
415.13.3			X																		
419.7						X	X														
419.9				X	X	X															
420.1			X	X	X																
420.4			X																		
420.5			X																		

(continued)

CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
CHAPTER 4 – SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS ON USE AND OCCUPANCY—continued

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHDPD				BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter	X							X	X	X	X		X								
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X																
Adopt only those sections that are listed below						X	X					X								X	
Chapter / Section																					
420.6			X																		
420.7				X																	
420.8				X		X															
420.8.1				X		X															
420.9				X																	
420.10			X																		
422.1												X									
435			X																		
436			X																		
439			X																		
440			X																		
441			X																		
442			X																		
443			X																		
444			X																		
446			X																		
449			X																	X	
450			X																		
452			X																		
453			X																		
455			X																		

CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE CHAPTER 5 – GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are non-regulatory, intended only as an aid to the user.

See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHDP				BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter	X							X	X	X	X		X								
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X																
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																					
Chapter / Section																					
503.1, Exception 1			X	X																	
Figure 5-1			X																		
Table 504.3			X																		
Table 504.4			X																		
Table 506.2			X																		
506.2.3			X																		
506.2.4			X																		
507.4			X																		
507.11			X																		
508.2.4			X																		
508.3.3			X																		
Table 508.4			X																		
Table 509			X																		
509.3			X																		
510.10			X																		

CHAPTER 5

GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS

User note: Code change proposals to sections preceded by the designation [F] will be considered by the International Fire Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page ix.

SECTION 501 GENERAL

501.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter control the height and area of structures hereafter erected and additions to existing structures.

[F] 501.2 Address identification. New and existing buildings shall be provided with approved address identification. The address identification shall be legible and placed in a position that is visible from the street or road fronting the property. Address identification characters shall contrast with their background. Address numbers shall be Arabic numbers or alphabetical letters. Numbers shall not be spelled out. Each character shall be a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) high with a minimum stroke width of $\frac{1}{2}$ inch (12.7 mm). Where required by the fire code official, address identification shall be provided in additional approved locations to facilitate emergency response. Where access is by means of a private road and the building

address cannot be viewed from the public way, a monument, pole or other approved sign or means shall be used to identify the structure. Address identification shall be maintained.

SECTION 502 DEFINITIONS

502.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

AREA, BUILDING.

BASEMENT.

EQUIPMENT PLATFORM.

GRADE PLANE.

HEIGHT, BUILDING.

MEZZANINE.

SECTION 503 GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHT AND AREA LIMITATIONS

503.1 General. Unless otherwise specifically modified in Chapter 4 and this chapter, building height, number of stories and building area shall not exceed the limits specified in Sections 504 and 506 based on the type of construction as determined by Section 602 and the occupancies as determined by Section 302 except as modified hereafter. Building height, number of stories and building area provisions shall be applied independently. Each portion of a building separated by one or more fire walls complying with Section 706 shall be considered to be a separate building.

Exceptions:

1. **[HCD 1]** Limited-density owner-built rural dwellings may be of any type of construction which will provide for a sound structural condition. Structural hazards which result in an unsound condition and which may constitute a substandard building are delineated by Section 17920.3 of the Health and Safety Code.
2. Other than structural requirements, solar photovoltaic panels supported by a structure with no use underneath shall not constitute additional story or additional floor area and may exceed the height limit when constructed on a roof top of a building provided the following conditions are met:
 - 1.1. For all occupancies, the highest point of the structure/panel shall meet the lower of the two values below:
 1. 3' above the allowable building height per this code.
 2. 3' above the roof of the building immediately below.

2.1. For installations on flat roofs in other than Group R-3 and R-4 occupancies, the highest point of the structure/panel shall meet the lower of the two values below:

1. 10' above the allowable building height per this code.
 2. 10' above the roof of the building immediately below.
3. Other than structural requirements, solar photovoltaic panels supported by a structure over parking stalls shall not constitute additional story or additional floor area and may exceed the height limit as specified in exception 2 (above) when the following conditions are met (see Figure 5-1):
 1. The area within the perimeter of the photovoltaic array has maximum rectangular dimension of 40 feet by 150 feet.
 2. The distance between solar photovoltaic array structures is a minimum of 10 feet clear.
 3. The driveway aisle separating solar photovoltaic array structures has a minimum width of 25 feet clear.
 4. Solar photovoltaic array structure is used only for parking purposes with no storage.
 5. Completely open on all sides (other than necessary structural supports) with no interior partitions.

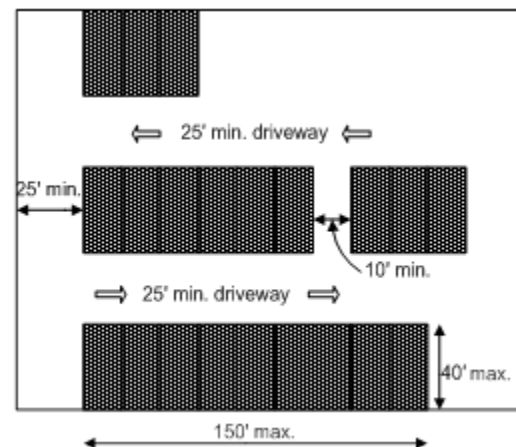
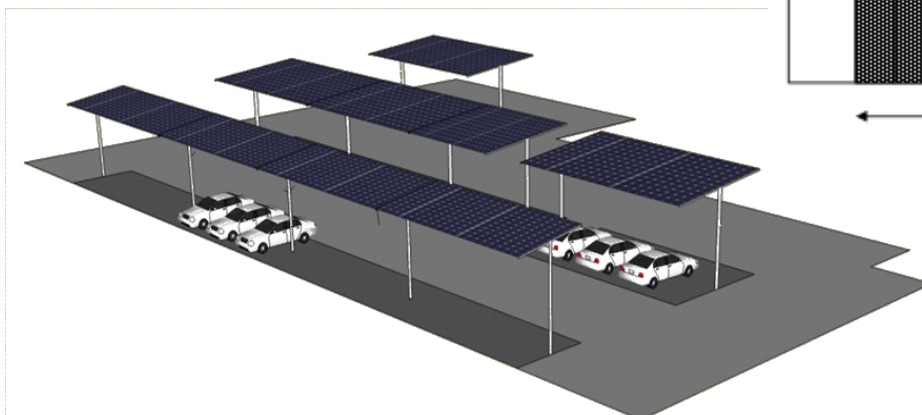


FIGURE 5-1

hour fire-resistance-rated construction or of wood panels or similar light construction up to 6 feet (1829 mm) in height.

12. Stages and platforms constructed in accordance with Sections 410.3 and 410.4, respectively.
13. Combustible exterior wall coverings, balconies and similar projections and bay or oriel windows in accordance with Chapter 14.
14. Blocking such as for handrails, millwork, cabinets and window and door frames.
15. Light-transmitting plastics as permitted by Chapter 26.
16. Mastics and caulking materials applied to provide flexible seals between components of exterior wall construction.
17. Exterior plastic veneer installed in accordance with Section 2605.2.
18. Nailing or furring strips as permitted by Section 803.11.
19. Heavy timber as permitted by Note c to Table 601 and Sections 602.4.7 and 1406.3.
20. Aggregates, component materials and admixtures as permitted by Section 703.2.2.
21. Sprayed fire-resistant materials and intumescent and mastic fire-resistant coatings, determined on the basis of fire resistance tests in accordance with Section 703.2 and installed in accordance with Sections 1705.14 and 1705.15, respectively.
22. Materials used to protect penetrations in fire-resistance-rated assemblies in accordance with Section 714.
23. Materials used to protect joints in fire-resistance-rated assemblies in accordance with Section 715.
24. Materials allowed in the concealed spaces of buildings of Types I and II construction in accordance with Section 718.5.
25. Materials exposed within plenums complying with Section 602 of the *California Mechanical Code*.
26. Wall construction of freezers and coolers of less than 1,000 square feet (92.9 m²), in size, lined on both sides with noncombustible materials and the building is protected throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

603.1.1 Ducts. The use of nonmetallic ducts shall be permitted where installed in accordance with the limitations of the *California Mechanical Code*.

603.1.2 Piping. The use of combustible piping materials shall be permitted where installed in accordance with the limitations of the *California Mechanical Code* and the *California Plumbing Code*.

603.1.3 Electrical. The use of electrical wiring methods with combustible insulation, tubing, raceways and related components shall be permitted where installed in accordance with the limitations of *this code and the California Electrical Code*.

CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
CHAPTER 9 – FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEMS—continued

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHDPD				BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter	X							X	X	X	X		X								
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X																
Adopt only those sections that are listed below						X	X													X	
Chapter / Section																					
907.2.2.2			X																		
907.2.3			X																		
907.2.3.1			X																		
907.2.3.2			X																		
907.2.3.3			X																		
907.2.3.4			X																		
907.2.3.5			X																		
907.2.3.6			X																		
907.2.3.6.1			X																		
907.2.3.6.2			X																		
907.2.3.7			X																		
907.2.3.8			X																		
907.2.3.8.1			X																		
907.2.3.8.2			X																		
907.2.5.1			X																		
907.2.6			X																		
907.2.6.2			X																		
907.2.6.2.1			X																		
907.2.6.2.2			X																		
907.2.6.3			X																		
907.2.6.3.3			X																		
907.2.6.3.4			X																		
907.2.6.4			X																		
907.2.9			X																		
907.2.9.1			X																		
907.2.9.4			X																		
907.2.9.4.1			X																		
907.2.11			X																		
907.2.11.1			X																		
907.2.11.2			X																		
907.2.11.2.1			X																		
907.2.11.2.2			X																		
907.2.11.2.3			X																		
907.2.11.3			X																		
907.2.11.4			X																		
907.2.11.5			X																		
907.2.11.6			X																		
907.2.11.8			X																		
907.2.11.9			X																		
907.2.13			X																		
907.2.13.1			X																		
907.2.13.1.2			X																		
907.2.24			X																		
907.2.24.1			X																		
907.2.24.2			X																		
907.2.24.3			X																		
907.2.24.4			X																		

(continued)

CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

CHAPTER 9 – FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEMS—continued

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD				BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter	X							X	X	X	X		X								
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X																
Adopt only those sections that are listed below						X	X													X	
Chapter / Section																					
907.2.24.4.1			X																		
907.2.24.4.2			X																		
907.2.24.4.3			X																		
907.2.25			X																		
907.2.25.1			X																		
907.2.25.2			X																		
907.2.26			X																		
907.2.26.1			X																		
907.2.26.2			X																		
907.2.26.3			X																		
907.2.26.4			X																		
907.2.26.4.1			X																		
907.2.26.4.2			X																		
907.2.27			X																		
907.2.28			X																		
907.2.28.1			X																		
907.2.29			X																		
907.2.29.1			X																		
907.2.29.2			X																		
907.2.29.3			X																		
907.2.29.4			X																		
907.3			X																		
907.3.2			X																		
907.3.2.1			X																		
907.3.2.2			X																		
907.3.2.3			X																		
907.3.2.4			X																		
907.4.2.1			X																		
907.4.2.2			X				X														
907.4.2.7			X																		
907.5.2.1			X																		
907.5.2.1.3			X																		
907.5.2.2			X																		
907.5.2.2.4			X																		
907.5.2.3			X				X														
907.5.2.3.1			X				X														
907.5.2.3.2			X				X														
Table 907.5.2.3.2			X				X														
907.5.2.3.3			X	X	X	X	X														
907.5.2.3.4			X				X														
907.5.2.4			X																		
907.5.2.5			X																		
907.6.1.1			X																		
907.6.4			X																		
907.6.4.1			X																		

(continued)

CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
CHAPTER 9 – FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEMS—continued

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD				BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter	X							X	X	X	X		X								
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X																
Adopt only those sections that are listed below						X	X													X	
Chapter / Section																					
907.6.4.1.1			X																		
907.6.4.2			X																		
907.6.4.3			X																		
907.6.4.4			X																		
907.6.6			X																		
907.6.6.3			X																		
908.7																					
909.5.3			X																		
909.5.3.1			X																		
909.12.1			X																		
909.13.1				X	X																
909.16			X																		
909.16.1			X																		
909.18.9			X																		
909.20			X																		
909.20.1			X																		
909.20.2.2			X																		
909.20.2.3			X																		
909.20.2.4			X																		
909.20.2.5			X																		
909.20.3			X																		
909.20.3.2			X																		
909.20.4			X																		
909.20.4.1			X																		
909.20.4.2			X																		
909.20.4.3			X																		
909.20.4.3.1			X																		
909.20.4.3.2			X																		
909.20.4.3.3			X																		
910.2.1			X																		
910.3.1			X																		
911.1			X																		
911.1.6			X																		
912.4			X																		
912.6			X																		
913.6			X																		
915.1			X	X	X																
915.1.1			X																		
915.2			X	X	X																
915.2.1			X	X	X																
915.4			X	X	X																

(continued)

CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

CHAPTER 9 – FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEMS—continued

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD				BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter	X							X	X	X	X		X								
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X																
Adopt only those sections that are listed below						X	X													X	
Chapter / Section																					
915.4.1, Exceptions 2 and 3			X	X	X																
915.4.2			X	X	X																
915.4.3			X	X	X																
915.4.4			X	X	X																
915.5.2			X	X	X																
915.5.3			X	X	X																
915.6			X	X	X																
915.7			X	X	X	X															

The state agency does not adopt sections identified by the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

CHAPTER 10 – MEANS OF EGRESS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are non-regulatory, intended only as an aid to the user.

See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC- CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHDP				BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter	X							X	X												
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X	X				X	X		X								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below							X														
Chapter / Section																					
1002.1			X																		
Accessible Means of Egress							X														
Area of Refuge							X														
Exit							X														
Guard (or Guardrail)				X	X	X	X														
Handrail							X														
Public Way							X														
Stair							X														
Stairway							X														
1003.1, not SFM exception							X														
1003.1			X			X															
1003.1.1										X			X								
1003.1.2											X										
1003.2			X																		
1003.3 Exc.			X																		
1003.3.1			X																		
1003.3.3.1			X																		
1003.3.4				X	X	X															
1003.5			X	X	X	X															
Table 1004.1.2			X																		
1004.3			X																		
1005.3.1			X																		
1005.3.2			X																		
1005.7.1			X																		
1005.7.2			X																		
1006.2.1			X																		
Table 1006.2.1			X																		
1006.2.2			X																		
1006.2.2.4			X																		
1006.2.2.6			X																		
1006.2.2.7			X																		
1006.3.2			X																		
Table 1006.3.2(1)			X																		
Table 1006.3.2(2)			X																		
1008.2			X																		
1009.1			X	X	X	X	X														
1009.2						X	X														
1009.2.1							X														
1009.3						X	X														
1009.4			X				X														
1009.5			X			X	X														

(continued)

CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
CHAPTER 10 – MEANS OF EGRESS—continued

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC- CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD				BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter	X							X	X												
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X	X				X	X		X								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below							X														
Chapter / Section																					
1009.6							X														
1009.6.1							X														
1009.6.2							X														
1009.6.3 <i>with Exception</i>			X	X	X	X	X														
1009.6.4							X														
1009.6.5							X														
1009.7							X														
1009.7.1							X														
1009.7.2							X														
1009.7.3							X														
1009.7.4							X														
1009.8							X														
1009.8.1			X			X	X														
1009.8.1.1						X	X														
1009.8.2			X			X	X														
1009.9						X	X														
1009.10							X														
1009.11						X	X														
1009.12			X			X	X														
1010 (1st paragraph below title only)							X														
1010.1.1			X			X															
1010.1.1.1			X																		
1010.1.2			X																		
1010.1.2.1			X																		
1010.1.4.1						X															
1010.1.4.4.1			X																		
1010.1.5						X															
1010.1.7						X															
1010.1.8						X															
1010.1.9.1			X			X															
1010.1.9.6			X																		
1010.1.9.7			X																		
1010.1.9.7 (Item 4, 6.3 & 6.4 only)							X														
1010.1.9.8			X																		
1010.1.9.10			X																		
1010.1.9.12			X																		
1010.1.10			X																		
1010.1.11			X																		
1011(1st paragraph below title only)							X														
1011.2			X																		
1011.5.2			X																		
1011.5.2 [DSA-AC: exc. 4 only]							X														

(continued)

CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
CHAPTER 10 – MEANS OF EGRESS—continued

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC- CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD				BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter	X							X	X												
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X	X				X	X		X								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below							X														
Chapter / Section																					
1011.6			X																		
1011.11			X																		
1011.11 (2nd paragraph only)							X														
1011.15			X																		
1012 (1st paragraph below title only)							X														
1012.1						X															
1012.6.3						X															
1012.6.4						X															
1012.6.5						X															
1012.10						X															
1013.1			X																		
1013.2			X																		
1013.4			X			X	X														
1013.6.3			X																		
1013.7			X																		
1013.8			X																		
1014 (1st paragraph below title only)							X														
1014.8			X			X															
1015.2							X														
1015.3			X	X	X	X	X														
1015.4			X																		
1015.8				X	X	X															
1016.2			X																		
1016.2.2			X																		
Table 1017.2			X																		
1018 (1st paragraph below title only)							X														
1018.3 Exc. only							X														
1018.5 Exc. only							X														
1019.3			X																		
1019.4			X																		
1020.1			X																		
Table 1020.1			X																		
Table 1020.2			X																		
1020.4			X																		

(continued)

CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
CHAPTER 10 – MEANS OF EGRESS—continued

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC- CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD				BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter	X							X	X												
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X	X				X	X		X								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below							X														
Chapter / Section																					
1020.5			X							X	X		X								
1020.6			X																		
1023.2			X																		
1023.9			X																		
1023.9 (2nd paragraph only)							X														
1023.9.1			X																		
1023.11.1			X																		
1023.11.2			X																		
1024.2			X																		
1026.4.2			X																		
1028.1			X																		
1028.5			X																		
1029.1			X																		
1029.2			X																		
1029.3			X																		
1029.3.1			X																		
1029.6.4			X																		
1029.9.1			X																		
1030.1			X																		
1030.4			X																		

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

2. Two-way communication systems are not required on floors provided with ramps conforming to the provisions of Section 1012.
3. Two-way communication systems are not required at the landings serving only service elevators that are not designated as part of the accessible means of egress or serve as part of the required accessible route into a facility.
4. Two-way communication systems are not required at the landings serving only freight elevators.
5. Two-way communication systems are not required at the landing serving a private residence elevator.

1009.8.1 System requirements. Two-way communication systems shall provide communication between each required location and a central control point location approved by the fire department. Where the central control point is not a constantly attended location, a two-way communication system shall have a timed automatic telephone dial-out capability to a monitoring location. The two-way communication system shall include both audible and visible signals.

1009.8.1.1 Visible communication method. [DSA-AC and HCD 1-AC] A button complying with Section 1138A.4 or Sections 11B-205 and 11B-309 in the area of refuge shall activate both a light in the area of refuge indicating that rescue has been requested and a light at the central control point indicating that rescue is being requested. A button at the central control point shall activate both a light at the central control point and a light in the area of refuge indicating that the request has been received.

1009.8.2 Directions. Directions for the use of the two-way communication system, instructions for summoning assistance via the two-way communication system and written identification of the location shall be posted adjacent to the two-way communication system. Signage shall comply with Chapter 11A, Section 1143A or Section 11B-703.5 requirements for visual characters.

1009.9 Signage. Signage indicating special accessibility provisions shall be provided as shown:

1. Each door providing access to an area of refuge from an adjacent floor area shall be identified by a sign stating: AREA OF REFUGE.
2. Each door providing access to an exterior area for assisted rescue shall be identified by a sign stating: EXTERIOR AREA FOR ASSISTED RESCUE.

Signage shall comply with Chapter 11A, Section 1143A and Chapter 11B, Section 11B-703.5 as applicable, requirements for visual characters and include the International Symbol of Accessibility. Where exit sign illumination is required by Section 1011.3, the signs shall be illuminated. Additionally, visual characters, raised character and Braille signage complying with Chapter 11A, Section 1143A or Chapter 11B, Sections 11B-703.1, 11B-703.2, 11B-703.3 and

11B-703.5 shall be located at each door to an area of refuge and exterior area for assisted rescue in accordance with Section 1013.4. *The International Symbol of Accessibility shall comply with Chapter 11A, Section 1143A or Chapter 11B, Section 11B-703.7.2.1.*

1009.10 Directional signage. Direction signage complying with Chapter 11B, Section 11B-703.5 indicating the location of the other means of egress and which of those are accessible means of egress shall be provided at the following:

1. At exits serving a required accessible space but not providing an approved accessible means of egress.
2. At elevator landings.
3. Within areas of refuge.

1009.11 Instructions. In areas of refuge and exterior areas for assisted rescue, instructions on the use of the area under emergency conditions shall be posted. Signage shall comply with Chapter 11A, Section 1143A or Chapter 11B, Section 11B-703.5 requirements for visual characters. The instructions shall include all of the following:

1. Persons able to use the exit stairway do so as soon as possible, unless they are assisting others.
2. Information on planned availability of assistance in the use of stairs or supervised operation of elevators and how to summon such assistance.
3. Directions for use of the two-way communications system where provided.

1009.12 Alarms/emergency warning systems/accessibility. *If emergency warning systems are required, they shall activate a means of warning the hearing impaired. Emergency warning systems as part of the fire-alarm system shall be designed and installed in accordance with NFPA 72 as amended in Chapter 35.*

SECTION 1010 DOORS, GATES AND TURNSTILES

[DSA-AC] *In addition to the requirements of this section, means of egress, which provide access to, or egress from, buildings or facilities where accessibility is required for applications listed in Section 1.9.1 regulated by the Division of the State Architect—Access Compliance, shall also comply with Chapter 11A or Chapter 11B, Sections 11B-206.5 and 11B-404, as applicable.*

1010.1 Doors. Means of egress doors shall meet the requirements of this section. Doors serving a means of egress system shall meet the requirements of this section and Section 1022.2. Doors provided for egress purposes in numbers greater than required by this code shall meet the requirements of this section.

Means of egress doors shall be readily distinguishable from the adjacent construction and finishes such that the doors are easily recognizable as doors. Mirrors or similar reflecting materials shall not be used on means of egress

doors. Means of egress doors shall not be concealed by curtains, drapes, decorations or similar materials.

1010.1.1 Size of doors. The required capacity of each door opening shall be sufficient for the occupant load thereof and shall provide a minimum clear width of 32 inches (813 mm). Clear openings of doorways with swinging doors shall be measured between the face of the door and the stop, with the door open 90 degrees (1.57 rad). Where this section requires a minimum clear width of 32 inches (813 mm) and a door opening includes two door leaves without a mullion, one leaf shall provide a clear opening width of 32 inches (813 mm). The maximum width of a swinging door leaf shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) nominal. Means of egress doors in a Group I-2 or I-2.1 occupancy used for the movement of beds and *stretcher patients* shall provide a clear width not less than 44 inches (1118 mm). The height of door openings shall be not less than 80 inches (2032 mm).

Exceptions:

1. The minimum and maximum width shall not apply to door openings that are not part of the required means of egress in Group R-2 and R-3 occupancies.
2. Door openings to resident sleeping units in Group I-3 occupancies shall have a clear width of not less than 28 inches (711 mm).
3. Door openings to storage closets less than 10 square feet (0.93 m²) in area shall not be limited by the minimum width.
4. Width of door leaves in revolving doors that comply with Section 1010.1.4.1 shall not be limited.
5. Door openings within a dwelling unit or sleeping unit shall not be less than 78 inches (1981 mm) in height.
6. Exterior door openings in dwelling units and sleeping units, other than the required exit door, shall not be less than 76 inches (1930 mm) in height.
7. In other than Group R-1 occupancies, the minimum widths shall not apply to interior egress doors within a dwelling unit or sleeping unit that is not required to be *adaptable or accessible as specified in Chapter 11A*.
8. Doors to walk-in freezers and coolers less than 1,000 square feet (93 m²) in area shall have a maximum width of 60 inches (1524 mm).
9. In Group R-1 dwelling units or sleeping units not required to be *adaptable or accessible as specified in Chapter 11A or 11B*, the minimum width shall not apply to doors for showers or saunas.

1010.1.1.1 Projections into clear width. There shall not be projections into the required clear width lower than 34 inches (864 mm) above the floor or ground.

Projections into the clear opening width between 34 inches (864 mm) and 80 inches (2032 mm) above the floor or ground shall not exceed 4 inches (102 mm).

Exception: Door closers and door stops shall be permitted to be 78 inches (1980 mm) minimum above the floor.

1010.1.2 Door swing. Egress doors shall be of the pivoted or side-hinged swinging type.

Exceptions:

1. Private garages, office areas, factory and storage areas with an occupant load of 10 or less.
2. Group I-3 occupancies used as a place of detention.
3. Critical or intensive care patient rooms within suites of health care facilities.
4. Doors within or serving a single dwelling unit in Groups R-2 and R-3.
5. In other than Group H occupancies, revolving doors complying with Section 1010.1.4.1.
6. In other than Group H occupancies, special purpose horizontal sliding, accordion or folding door assemblies complying with Section 1010.1.4.3.
7. Power-operated doors in accordance with Section 1010.1.4.2.
8. Doors serving a bathroom within an individual sleeping unit in Group R-1.
9. In other than Group H occupancies, manually operated horizontal sliding doors are permitted in a means of egress from spaces with an occupant load of 10 or less.
10. *In I-2 and I-2.1 occupancies, exit doors serving an occupant load of 50 or more, shall not be of the pivoted or balanced type.*

1010.1.2.1 Direction of swing. Pivot or side-hinged swinging doors shall swing in the direction of egress travel where serving a room or area containing an occupant load of 50 or more persons or a Group H occupancy. *For Group L occupancies, see Section 453.6.2.*

In a Group I-2 occupancy, all required exterior egress doors shall open in the direction of egress regardless of the occupant load served.

1010.1.3 Door opening force. The force for pushing or pulling open interior swinging egress doors, other than fire doors, shall not exceed 5 pounds (22 N). These forces do not apply to the force required to retract latch bolts or disengage other devices that hold the door in a closed position. For other swinging doors, as well as sliding and folding doors, the door latch shall release when subjected to a 15-pound (67 N) force. The door shall be set in motion when subjected to a 30-pound (133 N) force. The door shall swing to a full-open position when subjected to a 15-pound (67 N) force.

3. In Group R-3 occupancies not required to be *adaptable or accessible*, the landing at an exterior doorway shall not be more than $7\frac{3}{4}$ inches (197 mm) below the top of the threshold, provided the door, other than an exterior storm or screen door, does not swing over the landing.
4. Variations in elevation due to differences in finish materials, but not more than $\frac{1}{2}$ inch (12.7 mm).
5. Exterior decks, patios or balconies that are part of *adaptable or accessible* dwelling units, have impervious surfaces and that are not more than 4 inches (102 mm) below the finished floor level of the adjacent interior space of the dwelling unit. *See also Chapter 11A, Section 1132A.4.*
6. Doors serving equipment spaces not required to be accessible in accordance with Section 1103.2.9 and serving an occupant load of five or less shall be permitted to have a landing on one side to be not more than 7 inches (178 mm) above or below the landing on the egress side of the door.

1010.1.6 Landings at doors. Landings shall have a width not less than the width of the stairway or the door, whichever is greater. Doors in the fully open position shall not reduce a required dimension by more than 7 inches (178 mm). Where a landing serves an occupant load of 50 or more, doors in any position shall not reduce the landing to less than one-half its required width. Landings shall have a length measured in the direction of travel of not less than 44 inches (1118 mm).

Exception: Landing length in the direction of travel in Groups R-3 and U and within individual units of Group R-2 need not exceed 36 inches (914 mm).

1010.1.7 Thresholds. Thresholds at doorways shall not exceed $\frac{3}{4}$ inch (19.1 mm) in height above the finished floor or landing for sliding doors serving dwelling units or $\frac{1}{2}$ inch (12.7 mm) above the finished floor or landing for other doors. Raised thresholds and floor level changes greater than $\frac{1}{4}$ inch (6.4 mm) at doorways shall be beveled with a slope not greater than one unit vertical in two units horizontal (50-percent slope).

Exceptions:

1. In occupancy Group R-2 or R-3, threshold heights for sliding and side-hinged exterior doors shall be permitted to be up to $7\frac{3}{4}$ inches (197 mm) in height if all of the following apply:
 - 1.1. The door is not part of the required means of egress.
 - 1.2. The door is not part of an accessible route as required by *Chapter 11A or 11B*.
 - 1.3. The door is not part of an *adaptable or accessible dwelling unit*.
2. In *adaptable or accessible dwelling units*, where Exception 5 to Section 1010.1.5 permits a 4-inch (102 mm) elevation change at the door, the threshold height on the exterior side of the door

shall not exceed $4\frac{3}{4}$ inches (120 mm) in height above the exterior deck, patio or balcony for sliding doors or $4\frac{1}{2}$ inches (114 mm) above the exterior deck, patio or balcony for other doors.

1010.1.8 Door arrangement. Space between two doors in a series shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum plus the width of a door swinging into the space. Doors in a series shall swing either in the same direction or away from the space between the doors.

Exceptions:

1. The minimum distance between horizontal sliding power-operated doors in a series shall be 48 inches (1219 mm).
2. Storm and screen doors serving individual dwelling units in Groups R-2 and R-3 need not be spaced 48 inches (1219 mm) from the other door.
3. Doors within individual dwelling units in Groups R-2 and R-3 other than *adaptable or accessible* dwelling units.

1010.1.9 Door operations. Except as specifically permitted by this section egress doors shall be readily openable from the egress side without the use of a key or special knowledge or effort.

1010.1.9.1 Hardware. Door handles, pulls, latches, locks and other operating devices on doors required to be accessible by Chapter 11A or 11B shall not require tight grasping, tight pinching or twisting of the wrist to operate.

These design requirements for door handles, pulls, latches, locks and other operating devices, intended for use on required means of egress doors in other than Group R and M occupancies with an occupant load of 10 or less, shall comply with SFM Standard 12-10-2, Section 12-10-202 contained in the CCR, Title 24, Part 12, California Referenced Standards Code.

1010.1.9.2 Hardware height. Door handles, pulls, latches, locks and other operating devices shall be installed 34 inches (864 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1219 mm) maximum above the finished floor. Locks used only for security purposes and not used for normal operation are permitted at any height.

Exception: Access doors or gates in barrier walls and fences protecting pools, spas and hot tubs shall be permitted to have operable parts of the release of latch on self-latching devices at 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the finished floor or ground, provided the self-latching devices are not also self-locking devices operated by means of a key, electronic opener or integral combination lock.

1010.1.9.3 Locks and latches. Locks and latches shall be permitted to prevent operation of doors where any of the following exist:

1. Places of detention or restraint.
2. In buildings in occupancy Group A having an occupant load of 300 or less, Groups B, F, M and S, and in places of religious worship, the main door or doors are permitted to be equipped with

key-operated locking devices from the egress side provided:

- 2.1. The locking device is readily distinguishable as locked;
- 2.2. A readily visible durable sign is posted on the egress side on or adjacent to the door stating: THIS DOOR TO REMAIN UNLOCKED WHEN THIS SPACE IS OCCUPIED. The sign shall be in letters 1 inch (25 mm) high on a contrasting background.
- 2.3. The use of the key-operated locking device is revokable by the building official for due cause.
3. Where egress doors are used in pairs, approved automatic flush bolts shall be permitted to be used, provided that the door leaf having the automatic flush bolts does not have a doorknob or surface-mounted hardware.
4. Doors from individual dwelling or sleeping units of Group R occupancies having an occupant load of 10 or less are permitted to be equipped with a night latch, dead bolt or security chain, provided such devices are openable from the inside without the use of a key or tool.
5. Fire doors after the minimum elevated temperature has disabled the unlatching mechanism in accordance with listed fire door test procedures.

1010.1.9.4 Bolt locks. Manually operated flush bolts or surface bolts are not permitted.

Exceptions:

1. On doors not required for egress in individual dwelling units or sleeping units.
2. Where a pair of doors serves a storage or equipment room, manually operated edge- or surface-mounted bolts are permitted on the inactive leaf.
3. Where a pair of doors serves an occupant load of less than 50 persons in a Group B, F or S occupancy, manually operated edge- or surface-mounted bolts are permitted on the inactive leaf. The inactive leaf shall contain no doorknobs, panic bars or similar operating hardware.
4. Where a pair of doors serves a Group B, F or S occupancy, manually operated edge- or surface-mounted bolts are permitted on the inactive leaf provided such inactive leaf is not needed to meet egress capacity requirements and the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. The inactive leaf shall

not contain doorknobs, panic bars or similar operating hardware.

5. Where a pair of doors serves patient care rooms in Group I-2 occupancies, self-latching edge- or surface-mounted bolts are permitted on the inactive leaf provided that the inactive leaf is not needed to meet egress capacity requirements and the inactive leaf shall not contain doorknobs, panic bars or similar operating hardware.

1010.1.9.5 Unlatching. The unlatching of any door or leaf shall not require more than one operation.

Exceptions:

1. Places of detention or restraint.
2. Where manually operated bolt locks are permitted by Section 1010.1.9.4.
3. Doors with automatic flush bolts as permitted by Section 1010.1.9.3, Item 3.
4. Doors from individual dwelling units and sleeping units of Group R occupancies as permitted by Section 1010.1.9.3, Item 4.

1010.1.9.5.1 Closet and bathroom doors in Group R-4 occupancies. In Group R-4 occupancies, closet doors that latch in the closed position shall be openable from inside the closet, and bathroom doors that latch in the closed position shall be capable of being unlocked from the ingress side.

1010.1.9.6 Reserved.

1010.1.9.7 Delayed egress. Delayed egress locking systems shall be permitted to be installed on doors serving any occupancy except Group A, E, H and L occupancies.

Exception: Group A occupancy courtrooms are permitted to utilize delayed egress locks.

Buildings with delayed egress locks shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and an approved automatic smoke detection system installed in accordance with Section 907. The delayed egress locking system shall be installed and operated in accordance with all of the following:

1. The delay electronics of the delayed egress locking system shall deactivate upon actuation of the automatic sprinkler system or automatic fire detection system, allowing immediate, free egress.
2. The delay electronics of the delayed egress locking system shall deactivate upon loss of electrical power, allowing immediate free egress to any one of the following:
 - 2.1. The egress-control device itself.
 - 2.2. The smoke detection system.

edge shall be protected by guards installed in accordance with Section 1015.

1011.14 Alternating tread devices. Alternating tread devices are limited to an element of a means of egress in buildings of Groups F, H and S from a mezzanine not more than 250 square feet (23 m²) in area and that serves not more than five occupants; in buildings of Group I-3 from a guard tower, observation station or control room not more than 250 square feet (23 m²) in area and for access to unoccupied roofs. Alternating tread devices used as a means of egress shall not have a rise greater than 20 feet (6096 mm) between floor levels or landings.

1011.14.1 Handrails of alternating tread devices. Handrails shall be provided on both sides of alternating tread devices and shall comply with Section 1021.

1011.14.2 Treads of alternating tread devices. Alternating tread devices shall have a minimum tread depth of 5 inches (127 mm), a minimum projected tread depth of 8½ inches (216 mm), a minimum tread width of 7 inches (178 mm) and a maximum riser height of 9½ inches (241 mm). The tread depth shall be measured horizontally between the vertical planes of the foremost projections of adjacent treads. The riser height shall be measured vertically between the leading edges of adjacent treads. The riser height and tread depth provided shall result in an angle of ascent from the horizontal of between 50 and 70 degrees (0.87 and 1.22 rad). The initial tread of the device shall begin at the same elevation as the platform, landing or floor surface.

Exception: Alternating tread devices used as an element of a means of egress in buildings from a mezzanine area not more than 250 square feet (23 m²) in area that serves not more than five occupants shall have a minimum tread depth of 3 inches (76 mm) with a minimum projected tread depth of 10½ inches (267 mm). The rise to the next alternating tread surface shall not exceed 8 inches (203 mm).

1011.15 Ships ladders. Ships ladders are permitted to be used in *lifeguard towers not open to the public* and Group I-3 as a component of a means of egress to and from control rooms or elevated facility observation stations not more than 250 square feet (23 m²) with not more than three occupants and for access to unoccupied roofs. The minimum clear width at and below the handrails shall be 20 inches (508 mm).

1011.15.1 Handrails of ships ladders. Handrails shall be provided on both sides of ships ladders.

1011.15.2 Treads of ships ladders. Ships ladders shall have a minimum tread depth of 5 inches (127 mm). The tread shall be projected such that the total of the tread depth plus the nosing projection is not less than 8½ inches (216 mm). The maximum riser height shall be 9½ inches (241 mm).

1011.16 Ladders. Permanent ladders shall not serve as a part of the means of egress from occupied spaces within a build-

ing. Permanent ladders shall be permitted to provide access to the following areas:

1. Spaces frequented only by personnel for maintenance, repair or monitoring of equipment.
2. Nonoccupiable spaces accessed only by catwalks, crawl spaces, freight elevators or very narrow passageways.
3. Raised areas used primarily for purposes of security, life safety or fire safety including, but not limited to, observation galleries, prison guard towers, fire towers or lifeguard stands.
4. Elevated levels in Group U not open to the general public.
5. Nonoccupied roofs that are not required to have stairway access in accordance with Section 1011.12.1.
6. Ladders shall be constructed in accordance with Section 304.3 of the *California Mechanical Code*.

SECTION 1012 RAMPS

[DSA-AC] In addition to the requirements of this section, means of egress, which provide access to, or egress from, buildings or facilities where accessibility is required for applications listed in Section 1.9.1 regulated by the Division of the State Architect-Access Compliance, shall also comply with Chapter 11A or Chapter 11B, Section 11B-405, as applicable.

1012.1 Scope. The provisions of this section shall apply to ramps used as a component of a means of egress.

Exceptions:

1. Ramped aisles within assembly rooms or spaces shall comply with the provisions in Section 1029.
2. Curb ramps shall comply with *Chapter 11A or 11B, 11B-406, as applicable*.
3. Vehicle ramps in parking garages for pedestrian exit access shall not be required to comply with Sections 1012.3 through 1012.10 where they are not an accessible route serving accessible parking spaces, other required accessible elements or part of an accessible means of egress.

1012.2 Slope. Ramps used as part of a means of egress shall have a running slope not steeper than one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8-percent slope). The slope of other pedestrian ramps shall not be steeper than one unit vertical in eight units horizontal (12.5-percent slope).

1012.3 Cross slope. The slope measured perpendicular to the direction of travel of a ramp shall not be steeper than one unit vertical in 48 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

1012.4 Vertical rise. The rise for any ramp run shall be 30 inches (762 mm) maximum.

1012.5 Minimum dimensions. The minimum dimensions of means of egress ramps shall comply with Sections 1012.5.1 through 1012.5.3.

1012.5.1 Width and capacity. The minimum width and required capacity of a means of egress ramp shall be not less than that required for corridors by Section 1020.2. The clear width of a ramp between handrails, if provided, or other permissible projections shall be 36 inches (914 mm) minimum.

1012.5.2 Headroom. The minimum headroom in all parts of the means of egress ramp shall be not less than 80 inches (2032 mm).

1012.5.3 Restrictions. Means of egress ramps shall not reduce in width in the direction of egress travel. Projections into the required ramp and landing width are prohibited. Doors opening onto a landing shall not reduce the clear width to less than 42 inches (1067 mm).

1012.6 Landings. Ramps shall have landings at the bottom and top of each ramp, points of turning, entrance, exits and at doors. Landings shall comply with Sections 1012.6.1 through 1012.6.5.

1012.6.1 Slope. Landings shall have a slope not steeper than one unit vertical in 48 units horizontal (2-percent slope) in any direction. Changes in level are not permitted.

1012.6.2 Width. The landing width shall be not less than the width of the widest ramp run adjoining the landing.

1012.6.3 Length. The landing length shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum.

Exceptions:

1. In Group R-2 and R-3 individual dwelling and sleeping units that are not required to be accessible in accordance with *Chapter 11A*, landings are permitted to be 36 inches (914 mm) minimum.
2. Where the ramp is not a part of an accessible route, the length of the landing shall not be required to be more than 48 inches (1220 mm) in the direction of travel.

1012.6.4 Change in direction. Where changes in direction of travel occur at landings provided between ramp runs, the landing shall be 60 inches by 60 inches (1524 mm by 1524 mm) minimum.

Exception: In Group R-2 and R-3 individual dwelling or sleeping units that are not required to be accessible in accordance with *Chapter 11A*, landings are permitted to be 36 inches by 36 inches (914 mm by 914 mm) minimum.

1012.6.5 Doorways. Where doorways are located adjacent to a ramp landing, maneuvering clearances required for accessibility are permitted to overlap the required landing area as specified in *Chapter 11A*, or *11B*, as applicable.

1012.7 Ramp construction. Ramps shall be built of materials consistent with the types permitted for the type of construction of the building, except that wood handrails shall be permitted for all types of construction.

1012.7.1 Ramp surface. The surface of ramps shall be of slip-resistant materials that are securely attached.

1012.7.2 Outdoor conditions. Outdoor ramps and outdoor approaches to ramps shall be designed so that water will not accumulate on walking surfaces.

1012.8 Handrails. Ramps with a rise greater than 6 inches (152 mm) shall have handrails on both sides. Handrails shall comply with Section 1014.

1012.9 Guards. Guards shall be provided where required by Section 1015 and shall be constructed in accordance with Section 1015.

1012.10 Edge protection. Edge protection complying with Section 1012.10.1 or 1012.10.2 shall be provided on each side of ramp runs and at each side of ramp landings.

Exceptions:

1. Edge protection is not required on ramps that are not required to have handrails, provided they have flared sides that comply with *Chapter 11A* or *11B*.
2. Edge protection is not required on the sides of ramp landings serving an adjoining ramp run or stairway.
3. Edge protection is not required on the sides of ramp landings having a vertical dropoff of not more than $\frac{1}{2}$ inch (12.7 mm) within 10 inches (254 mm) horizontally of the required landing area.

1012.10.1 Curb, rail, wall or barrier. A curb, rail, wall or barrier shall be provided to serve as edge protection. A curb shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in height. Barriers shall be constructed so that the barrier prevents the passage of a 4-inch-diameter (102 mm) sphere, where any portion of the sphere is within 4 inches (102 mm) of the floor or ground surface.

1012.10.2 Extended floor or ground surface. The floor or ground surface of the ramp run or landing shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the inside face of a handrail complying with Section 1014.

SECTION 1013 EXIT SIGNS

1013.1 Where required. Exits and exit access doors shall be marked by an approved exit sign readily visible from any direction of egress travel. The path of egress travel to exits and within exits shall be marked by readily visible exit signs to clearly indicate the direction of egress travel in cases where the exit or the path of egress travel is not immediately visible to the occupants. Intervening means of egress doors within exits shall be marked by exit signs. Exit sign placement shall be such that no point in an exit access corridor or exit passageway is more than 100 feet (30 480 mm) or the listed viewing distance for the sign, whichever is less, from the nearest visible exit sign.

Exceptions:

1. Exit signs are not required in rooms or areas that require only one exit or exit access.

1023.7 Interior exit stairway and ramp exterior walls.

Exterior walls of the interior exit stairway or ramp shall comply with the requirements of Section 705 for exterior walls. Where nonrated walls or unprotected openings enclose the exterior of the stairway or ramps and the walls or openings are exposed by other parts of the building at an angle of less than 180 degrees (3.14 rad), the building exterior walls within 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally of a nonrated wall or unprotected opening shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour. Openings within such exterior walls shall be protected by opening protectives having a fire protection rating of not less than $\frac{3}{4}$ hour. This construction shall extend vertically from the ground to a point 10 feet (3048 mm) above the topmost landing of the stairway or ramp, or to the roof line, whichever is lower.

1023.8 Discharge identification. An interior exit stairway and ramp shall not continue below its level of exit discharge unless an approved barrier is provided at the level of exit discharge to prevent persons from unintentionally continuing into levels below. Directional exit signs shall be provided as specified in Section 1013.

1023.9 Stairway identification signs. A sign shall be provided at each floor landing in an interior exit stairway and ramp connecting more than three stories designating the floor level, the terminus of the top and bottom of the interior exit stairway and ramp and the identification of the stairway or ramp. The signage shall also state the story of, and the direction to, the exit discharge and the availability of roof access from the interior exit stairway and ramp for the fire department. The sign shall be located 5 feet (1524 mm) above the floor landing in a position that is readily visible when the doors are in the open and closed positions.

In addition to the stairway identification sign, raised characters and braille floor identification signs that comply with Chapter 11A, Section 1143A or Chapter 11B shall be located at the landing of each floor level, placed adjacent to the door on the latch side, in all enclosed stairways in buildings two or more stories in height to identify the floor level. At the exit discharge level, the sign shall include a raised five pointed star located to the left of the identifying floor level. The outside diameter of the star shall be the same as the height of the raised characters.

1023.9.1 Signage requirements. Stairway identification signs shall comply with all of the following requirements:

1. The signs shall be a minimum size of 18 inches (457 mm) by 12 inches (305 mm).
2. The letters designating the identification of the interior exit stairway and ramp, such as *STAIR NO. 1* or *WEST STAIR*, shall be placed at the top of the sign and shall be not less than $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches (38 mm) in height block lettering with $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch (6 mm) strokes.
3. The number designating the floor level shall be not less than 5 inches (127 mm) in height with $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch (19 mm) strokes and located in the center of the sign. The mezzanine levels shall have the letter "M" preceding the floor level. Basement levels shall have the letter "B" preceding the floor number.
4. Other lettering and numbers shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in height.
5. The stairway's upper terminus, such as *ROOF ACCESS* or *NO ROOF ACCESS*, shall be placed under the stairway identification in 1-inch-high (25 mm) block lettering with $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch (6 mm) strokes.
6. The lower and upper terminus of the stairway shall be placed at the bottom of the sign in 1-inch-high (25 mm) block lettering with $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch (6 mm) strokes.
7. Characters and their background shall have a non-glare finish. Characters shall contrast with their background, with either light characters on a dark background or dark characters on a light background.
8. Where signs required by Section 1023.9 are installed in the interior exit stairways and ramps of buildings subject to Section 1025, the signs shall be made of the same materials as required by Section 1025.4.

1023.10 Elevator lobby identification signs. At landings in interior exit stairways where two or more doors lead to the floor level, any door with direct access to an enclosed elevator lobby shall be identified by signage located on the door or directly adjacent to the door stating "Elevator Lobby." Signage shall be in accordance with Section 1023.9.1, Items 4, 5 and 6.

1023.11 Smokeproof enclosures. Where required by Section 403.5.4 or 405.7.2, interior exit stairways and ramps shall be smokeproof enclosures in accordance with Section 909.20.

1023.11.1 Termination and extension. A smokeproof enclosure shall terminate at an exit discharge or a public way. The smokeproof enclosure shall be permitted to be extended by an exit passageway in accordance with Section 1023.3. The exit passageway shall be without openings other than the fire door assembly required by Section 1023.3.1 and those necessary for egress from the exit passageway. The exit passageway shall be separated from the remainder of the building by 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

Exceptions:

1. Openings in the exit passageway serving a smokeproof enclosure are permitted where the exit passageway is protected and pressurized in the same manner as the smokeproof enclosure, and openings are protected as required for access from other floors.
2. The fire barrier separating the smokeproof enclosure from the exit passageway is not required, provided the exit passageway is protected and pressurized in the same manner as the smokeproof enclosure.
3. A smokeproof enclosure shall be permitted to egress through areas on the level of exit discharge or vestibules as permitted by Section 1028.

1023.11.2 Enclosure access. Access to the stairway or ramp within a smokeproof enclosure shall be by way of a vestibule or an open exterior balcony.

SECTION 1024 EXIT PASSAGEWAYS

1024.1 Exit passageways. Exit passageways serving as an exit component in a means of egress system shall comply with the requirements of this section. An exit passageway shall not be used for any purpose other than as a means of egress and a circulation path.

1024.2 Width. The required capacity of exit passageways shall be determined as specified in Section 1005.1 but the minimum width shall be not less than 44 inches (1118 mm), except that exit passageways serving an occupant load of less than 50 shall be not less than 36 inches (914 mm) in width. The minimum width or required capacity of exit passageways shall be unobstructed.

Exception: Encroachments complying with Section 1005.7.

The clear width of exit passageways in a Group I-2 occupancy used for the movement of beds and litters shall be 44-inch (1118) minimum.

1024.3 Construction. Exit passageway enclosures shall have walls, floors and ceilings of not less than a 1-hour fire-resistance rating, and not less than that required for any connecting interior exit stairway or ramp. Exit passageways shall be constructed as fire barriers in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

1024.4 Termination. Exit passageways on the level of exit discharge shall terminate at an exit discharge. Exit passageways on other levels shall terminate at an exit.

1024.5 Openings. Exit passageway opening protectives shall be in accordance with the requirements of Section 716.

Except as permitted in Section 402.8.7, openings in exit passageways other than unprotected exterior openings shall be limited to those necessary for exit access to the exit passageway from normally occupied spaces and for egress from the exit passageway.

Where an interior exit stairway or ramp is extended to an exit discharge or a public way by an exit passageway, the exit passageway shall comply with Section 1023.3.1.

Elevators shall not open into an exit passageway.

1024.6 Penetrations. Penetrations into or through an exit passageway are prohibited except for equipment and ductwork necessary for independent pressurization, sprinkler piping, standpipes, electrical raceway for fire department communication and electrical raceway serving the exit passageway and terminating at a steel box not exceeding 16 square inches (0.010 m²). Such penetrations shall be protected in accordance with Section 714. There shall not be penetrations or communicating openings, whether protected or not, between adjacent exit passageways.

Exception: Membrane penetrations shall be permitted on the outside of the exit passageway. Such penetrations shall be protected in accordance with Section 714.3.2.

1024.7 Ventilation. Equipment and ductwork for exit passageway ventilation as permitted by Section 1024.6 shall comply with one of the following:

1. The equipment and ductwork shall be located exterior to the building and shall be directly connected to the exit passageway by ductwork enclosed in construction as required for shafts.
2. Where the equipment and ductwork is located within the exit passageway, the intake air shall be taken directly from the outdoors and the exhaust air shall be discharged directly to the outdoors, or the air shall be conveyed through ducts enclosed in construction as required for shafts.
3. Where located within the building, the equipment and ductwork shall be separated from the remainder of the building, including other mechanical equipment, with construction as required for shafts.

In each case, openings into the fire-resistance-rated construction shall be limited to those needed for maintenance and operation and shall be protected by opening protectives in accordance with Section 716 for shaft enclosures.

Exit passageway ventilation systems shall be independent of other building ventilation systems.

SECTION 1025 LUMINOUS EGRESS PATH MARKINGS

1025.1 General. Approved luminous egress path markings delineating the exit path shall be provided in high-rise buildings of Group A, B, E, I, M, and R-1 occupancies in accordance with Sections 1025.1 through 1025.5.

Exception: Luminous egress path markings shall not be required on the level of exit discharge in lobbies that serve as part of the exit path in accordance with Section 1028.1, Exception 1.

1025.2 Markings within exit components. Egress path markings shall be provided in interior exit stairways, interior exit ramps and exit passageways, in accordance with Sections 1025.2.1 through 1025.2.6.

1025.2.1 Steps. A solid and continuous stripe shall be applied to the horizontal leading edge of each step and shall extend for the full length of the step. Outlining stripes shall have a minimum horizontal width of 1 inch (25 mm) and a maximum width of 2 inches (51 mm). The leading edge of the stripe shall be placed not more than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) from the leading edge of the step and the stripe shall not overlap the leading edge of the step by not more than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) down the vertical face of the step.

Exception: The minimum width of 1 inch (25 mm) shall not apply to outlining stripes listed in accordance with UL 1994.

patient bedrooms shall contain one shower or one bathtub, one lavatory, and one water closet.

11B-213.3 Plumbing fixtures and accessories. Plumbing fixtures and accessories provided in a toilet room or bathing room required to comply with *Section 11B-213.2* shall comply with *Section 11B-213.3*.

11B-213.3.1 Toilet compartments. Where toilet compartments are provided, at least *five percent of the toilet compartments, or five percent of the combination of toilet compartments and urinals, but no fewer than one toilet compartment* shall comply with *Section 11B-604.8.1*. In addition to the *compartments* required to comply with *Section 11B-604.8.1*, where six or more toilet compartments are provided, or where the combination of urinals and water closets totals six or more fixtures, *toilet compartments complying with Section 11B-604.8.2 shall be provided in the same quantity as the toilet compartments required to comply with Section 11B-604.8.1*.

11B-213.3.2 Water closets. Where water closets are provided, at least *5 percent but no fewer than one* shall comply with *Section 11B-604*.

11B-213.3.3 Urinals. Where *one or more urinals* are provided, at least *10 percent but no fewer than one* shall comply with *Section 11B-605*.

11B-213.3.4 Lavatories. Where lavatories are provided, at least *10 percent but no fewer than one* shall comply with *Section 11B-606* and shall not be located in a toilet compartment.

11B-213.3.5 Mirrors. Where mirrors are provided, at least one shall comply with *Section 11B-603.3*.

11B-213.3.6 Bathing facilities. Where bathtubs or showers are provided, at least one bathtub complying with *Section 11B-607* or at least one shower complying with *Section 11B-608* shall be provided. *Where two or more accessible showers are provided within the same functional area, at least one shower shall be opposite hand from the other or others (that is, one left-hand controls versus right-hand controls).*

11B-213.3.7 Coat hooks and shelves. Where coat hooks or shelves are provided in toilet rooms without toilet compartments, at least one of each type shall comply with *Section 11B-603.4*. Where coat hooks or shelves are provided in toilet compartments, at least one of each type complying with *Section 11B-604.8.3* shall be provided in toilet compartments required to comply with *Section 11B-213.3.1*. Where coat hooks or shelves are provided in bathing facilities, at least one of each type complying with *Section 11B-603.4* shall serve fixtures required to comply with *Section 11B-213.3.6*.

11B-214 Washing machines and clothes dryers

11B-214.1 General. Where provided, washing machines and clothes dryers shall comply with *Section 11B-214*.

11B-214.2 Washing machines. Where three or fewer washing machines are provided, at least one shall comply with

Section 11B-611. Where more than three washing machines are provided, at least two shall comply with *Section 11B-611*.

11B-214.3 Clothes dryers. Where three or fewer clothes dryers are provided, at least one shall comply with *Section 11B-611*. Where more than three clothes dryers are provided, at least two shall comply with *Section 11B-611*.

11B-215 Fire alarm systems and carbon monoxide alarm systems

11B-215.1 General. Where fire alarm systems and carbon monoxide alarm systems provide audible alarm coverage, alarms shall comply with *Section 11B-215*.

Exception: In existing facilities, visible alarms for fire alarm systems shall not be required except where an existing fire alarm system is upgraded or replaced, or a new fire alarm system is installed.

11B-215.2 Public and common use areas. Alarms in public use areas and common use areas shall comply with *Chapter 9, Section 907.5.2.3.1*.

11B-215.3 Employee work areas. Where employee work areas have audible alarm coverage, the wiring system shall be designed so that visible alarms complying with *Chapter 9, Section 907.5.2.3.1* Exception can be integrated into the alarm system.

11B-215.4 Transient lodging. Guest rooms required to comply with *Section 11B-224.4* shall provide fire alarms complying with *Chapter 9, Section 907.5.2.3.2*, and carbon monoxide alarms, where provided, complying with *Chapter 9, Section 915*.

11B-215.5 Residential facilities. Where provided in residential dwelling units required to comply with *Section 11B-809.5*, fire alarms shall comply with *Chapter 9, Section 907.5.2.3.3* and carbon monoxide alarms shall comply with *Chapter 9, Section 915*.

11B-216 Signs

11B-216.1 General. New or altered signs shall be provided in accordance with *Section 11B-216* and shall comply with *Section 11B-703*. The addition of or replacement of signs shall not trigger any additional path of travel requirements.

Exceptions:

1. Building directories, menus, seat and row designations in assembly areas, occupant names, building addresses, and company names and logos shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-216*.
2. *Reserved*.
3. Temporary, 7 days or less, signs shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-216*.
4. In detention and correctional facilities, signs not located in public use areas shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-216*.

11B-216.2 Designations. Interior and exterior signs identifying permanent rooms and spaces shall comply with *Sections 11B-703.1, 11B-703.2, 11B-703.3* and *11B-703.5*. Where pictograms are provided as designations of permanent rooms

and spaces, the pictograms shall comply with *Section 11B-703.6* and shall have text descriptors complying with *Sections 11B-703.2* and *11B-703.5*.

Exception: Exterior signs that are not located at the door to the space they serve shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-703.2*.

11B-216.3 Directional and informational signs. Signs that provide direction to or information about interior and exterior spaces and facilities of the site shall comply with *Section 11B-703.5*.

11B-216.4 Means of egress. Signs for means of egress shall comply with *Section 11B-216.4*.

11B-216.4.1 Exit doors. Signs required by *Chapter 10, Section 1013.4* at doors to exit passageways, exit discharge, and exit stairways shall comply with *Sections 11B-703.1, 11B-703.2, 11B-703.3* and *11B-703.5*.

11B-216.4.2 Areas of refuge and exterior areas for assisted rescue. Signs required by *Chapter 10, Section 1009.11* to provide instructions in areas of refuge shall comply with *Section 11B-703.5*. Signs required by *Chapter 10, Section 1009.9* at doors to areas of refuge and exterior areas for assisted rescue shall comply with *Sections 11B-703.1, 11B-703.2, 11B-703.3* and *11B-703.5* and include an International Symbol of Accessibility complying with *Section 11B-703.7.2.1*.

11B-216.4.3 Directional signs. Signs required by *Chapter 10, Section 1009.10* to provide directions to accessible means of egress shall comply with *Section 11B-703.5*.

11B-216.4.4 Delayed egress locks. Signs required by *Chapter 10, Section 1010.1.9.7, Item 6.4* at doors with delayed egress locks shall comply with *Sections 11B-703.1, 11B-703.2, 11B-703.3* and *11B-703.5*.

11B-216.5 Parking. Signs identifying parking spaces and signs within parking facilities shall comply with *Section 11B-216.5*.

11B-216.5.1 Parking spaces. Parking spaces complying with *Section 11B-502* shall be identified by signs complying with *Sections 11B-502.6* and *11B-502.8*.

Exceptions:

1. *Reserved.*
2. In residential facilities, where parking spaces are assigned to specific residential dwelling units, identification of accessible parking spaces shall not be required.

11B-216.5.2 Parking facilities. Signs within parking facilities shall comply with *Section 11B-216.5.2*.

11B-216.5.2.1 Signs intended for use by pedestrians. Signs intended for use by pedestrians within parking facilities, including directional or informational signs indicating parking sections or levels, shall comply with the requirements of *Section 11B-216*.

11B-216.5.2.2 Additional signs. Signs within parking facilities containing parking spaces complying with *Section 11B-502* shall comply with *Section 11B-502.8*.

11B-216.6 Entrances. In existing buildings and facilities where not all entrances comply with *Section 11B-404*, entrances complying with *Section 11B-404* shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with *Section 11B-703.7.2.1*. Directional signs complying with *Section 11B-703.5* that indicate the location of the nearest entrance complying with *Section 11B-404* shall be provided at entrances that do not comply with *Section 11B-404*. Directional signs complying with *Section 11B-703.5*, including the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with *Section 11B-703.7.2.1*, indicating the accessible route to the nearest accessible entrance shall be provided at junctions when the accessible route diverges from the regular circulation path.

11B-216.7 Elevators. Where existing elevators do not comply with *Section 11B-407*, elevators complying with *Section 11B-407* shall be clearly identified with the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with *Section 11B-703.7.2.1*. Existing buildings that have been remodeled to provide specific elevators for public use that comply with these building standards shall have the location of and the directions to these elevators posted in the building lobby on a sign complying with *Section 11B-703.5*, including the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with *Section 11B-703.7.2.1*.

11B-216.8 Toilet rooms and bathing rooms. Where existing toilet rooms or bathing rooms do not comply with *Section 11B-603*, directional signs indicating the location of the nearest toilet room or bathing room complying with *Section 11B-603* within the facility shall be provided. Signs shall comply with *Section 11B-703.5* and shall include the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with *Section 11B-703.7.2.1*. Where existing toilet rooms or bathing rooms do not comply with *Section 11B-603*, the toilet rooms or bathing rooms complying with *Section 11B-603* shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with *Section 11B-703.7.2.1*. Where clustered single user toilet rooms or bathing facilities are permitted to use exceptions to *Section 11B-213.2*, toilet rooms or bathing facilities complying with *Section 11B-603* shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with *Section 11B-703.7.2.1* unless all toilet rooms and bathing facilities comply with *Section 11B-603*. Existing buildings that have been remodeled to provide specific toilet rooms or bathing rooms for public use that comply with these building standards shall have the location of and the directions to these rooms posted in or near the building lobby or entrance on a sign complying with *Section 11B-703.5*, including the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with *Section 11B-703.7.2.1*.

11B-216.8.1 Geometric symbols. Geometric symbols complying with *Section 11B-703.7.2.6* shall be provided at entrances to toilet and bathing rooms.

Exceptions:

1. Geometric symbols shall not be required at entrances to toilet and bathing rooms located within private or semi-private rooms or spaces. Such spaces include but are not limited to:

centers, reception desks, medicine preparation areas, laboratory work stations, equipment consoles, clean and soiled utility cabinets, and storage areas; and shall comply with Sections 11B-225 and 11B-902.

Exceptions:

1. Built-in wardrobes in patient bedrooms and resident sleeping rooms not required to be accessible are not required to comply with the provisions of this chapter.
2. Clinical laboratory work stations provided in a laboratory area that are in addition to the minimum number required to be accessible (5 percent of the work stations provided, but no fewer than one), are not required to comply with the provisions of Section 11B-902.

11B-806 Transient lodging guest rooms

11B-806.1 General. Transient lodging guest rooms shall comply with Section 11B-806. Guest rooms required to provide mobility features shall comply with Section 11B-806.2. Guest rooms required to provide communication features shall comply with Section 11B-806.3.

11B-806.2 Guest rooms with mobility features. Guest rooms required to provide mobility features shall comply with Section 11B-806.2.

11B-806.2.1 Living and dining areas. Living and dining areas shall be accessible.

11B-806.2.2 Exterior spaces. Exterior spaces, including patios, terraces and balconies, that serve the guest room shall be accessible.

11B-806.2.3 Sleeping areas. At least one sleeping area shall provide a 36 inch (914 mm) by 48 inch (1219 mm) minimum clear space on both sides of a bed. The clear space shall be positioned for parallel approach to the side of the bed.

Exception: Where a single clear floor space complying with Section 11B-305 positioned for parallel approach is provided between two beds, a clear floor or ground space shall not be required on both sides of a bed.

11B-806.2.3.1 Personal lift device floor space. There shall be a clear space under the bed for the use of a personal lift device. The clear space shall extend under the bed parallel to the long side and be adjacent to an accessible route. The clear space shall extend to points horizontally 30 inches (762 mm), vertically 7 inches (178 mm) and not more than 12 inches (305 mm) from the head and foot end of the bed.

11B-806.2.4 Toilet and bathing facilities. At least one bathroom that is provided as part of a guest room shall comply with Section 11B-603. No fewer than one water closet, one lavatory, and one bathtub or shower shall comply with applicable requirements of Sections 11B-603 through 11B-610. In addition, required roll-in shower compartments shall comply with Section 11B-608.2.2 or 11B-608.2.3. Toilet and bathing fixtures required to comply with Sections 11B-603 through 11B-610 shall be permitted to be located in more than one toilet or bathing

area, provided that travel between fixtures does not require travel between other parts of the guest room.

11B-806.2.4.1 Vanity counter top space. If vanity counter top space is provided in non-accessible guest toilet or bathing rooms, comparable vanity counter top space, in terms of size and proximity to the lavatory, shall also be provided in accessible guest toilet or bathing rooms.

11B-806.2.5 Kitchens, kitchenettes and wet bars. Kitchens, kitchenettes and wet bars shall comply with Section 11B-804.

11B-806.2.6 Turning space. Turning space complying with Section 11B-304 shall be provided within the guest room.

11B-806.3 Guest rooms with communication features. Guest rooms required to provide communication features shall comply with Section 11B-806.3.

11B-806.3.1 Alarms. Where emergency warning systems are provided, fire alarms shall comply with Section 11B-702 and carbon monoxide alarms shall comply with Chapter 9, Section 915.

11B-806.3.2 Notification devices. Visible notification devices shall be provided to alert room occupants of incoming telephone calls and a door knock or bell. Notification devices shall not be connected to visible alarm signal appliances. Telephones shall have volume controls compatible with the telephone system and shall comply with Section 11B-704.3. Telephones shall be served by an electrical outlet complying with Section 11B-309 located within 48 inches (1219 mm) of the telephone to facilitate the use of a TTY.

11B-807 Holding cells and housing cells

11B-807.1 General. Holding cells and housing cells shall comply with Section 11B-807.

11B-807.2 Cells with mobility features. Cells required to provide mobility features shall comply with Section 11B-807.2.

11B-807.2.1 Turning space. Turning space complying with Section 11B-304 shall be provided within the cell.

11B-807.2.2 Benches. Where benches are provided, at least one bench shall comply with Section 11B-903.

11B-807.2.3 Beds. Where beds are provided, clear floor space complying with Section 11B-305 shall be provided on at least one side of the bed. The clear floor space shall be positioned for parallel approach to the side of the bed.

11B-807.2.4 Toilet and bathing facilities. Toilet facilities or bathing facilities that are provided as part of a cell shall comply with Section 11B-603. Where provided, no fewer than one water closet, one lavatory, and one bathtub or shower shall comply with the applicable requirements of Sections 11B-603 through 11B-610.

11B-807.3 Cells with communication features. Cells required to provide communication features shall comply with Section 11B-807.3.

11B-807.3.1 Alarms. Where audible emergency alarm systems are provided to serve the occupants of cells, visible alarms complying with *Section 11B-702* shall be provided.

Exception: Visible alarms shall not be required where inmates or detainees are not allowed independent means of egress.

11B-807.3.2 Telephones. Telephones, where provided within cells, shall have volume controls complying with *Section 11B-704.3*.

11B-808 Courtrooms

11B-808.1 General. Courtrooms shall comply with *Section 11B-808*.

11B-808.2 Turning space. Where provided, areas that are raised or depressed and accessed by ramps or platform lifts with entry ramps shall provide unobstructed turning space complying with *Section 11B-304*.

11B-808.3 Clear floor space. Each jury box and witness stand shall have, within its defined area, clear floor space complying with *Section 11B-305*.

Exception: In alterations, wheelchair spaces are not required to be located within the defined area of raised jury boxes or witness stands and shall be permitted to be located outside these spaces where ramp or platform lift access poses a hazard by restricting or projecting into a means of egress required by the appropriate administrative authority.

11B-808.4 Judges' benches and courtroom stations. Judges' benches, clerks' stations, bailiffs' stations, deputy clerks' stations, court reporters' stations and litigants' and counsel stations shall comply with *Section 11B-902*.

11B-809 Residential dwelling units

11B-809.1 General. When located within public housing facilities, residential dwelling units shall comply with *Section 11B-809*. Residential dwelling units required to provide mobility features shall comply with *Sections 11B-809.2* through *11B-809.4*. Residential dwelling units required to provide communication features shall comply with *Section 11B-809.5*.

11B-809.2 Accessible routes. Accessible routes complying with *Division 4* shall be provided within residential dwelling units in accordance with *Section 11B-809.2*.

Exception: Accessible routes shall not be required to or within unfinished attics or unfinished basements.

11B-809.2.1 Location. At least one accessible route shall connect all spaces and elements which are a part of the residential dwelling unit. Where only one accessible route is provided, it shall not pass through bathrooms, closets, or similar spaces.

11B-809.2.2 Turning space. All rooms served by an accessible route shall provide a turning space complying with *Section 11B-304*.

Exception: Turning space shall not be required in exterior spaces 30 inches (762 mm) maximum in depth or width.

11B-809.3 Kitchen. Where a kitchen is provided, it shall comply with *Section 11B-804*.

11B-809.4 Toilet facilities and bathing facilities. At least one bathroom shall comply with *Section 11B-603*. No fewer than one of each type of fixture provided within the bathroom shall comply with applicable requirements of *Sections 11B-603* through *11B-610*. Toilet and bathing fixtures required to comply with *Sections 11B-603* through *11B-610* shall be located in the same bathroom or toilet and bathing area, such that travel between fixtures does not require travel between other parts of the residential dwelling unit.

11B-809.4.1 Subsequent bathrooms. In residential dwelling units with more than one bathroom, when a bathtub is installed in the first bathroom in compliance with *Section 11B-809.4* and a shower compartment is provided in a subsequent bathroom, at least one shower compartment shall comply with *Section 11B-608*.

11B-809.5 Residential dwelling units with communication features. Residential dwelling units required to provide communication features shall comply with *Section 11B-809.5*.

11B-809.5.1 Building fire alarm system. Where a building fire alarm system is provided, the system wiring shall be extended to a point within the residential dwelling unit in the vicinity of the residential dwelling unit smoke detection system.

11B-809.5.1.1 Alarm appliances. Where alarm appliances are provided within a residential dwelling unit as part of the building fire alarm system, they shall comply with *Chapter 9, Section 907.5.2.3.3*.

11B-809.5.1.2 Activation. All visible alarm appliances provided within the residential dwelling unit for building fire alarm notification shall be activated upon activation of the building fire alarm in the portion of the building containing the residential dwelling unit.

11B-809.5.2 Residential dwelling unit smoke detection system and carbon monoxide detection system. Residential dwelling unit smoke detection systems shall comply with *Chapter 9, Section 907.2.11*. Residential dwelling unit carbon monoxide detection systems shall comply with *Chapter 4*.

11B-809.5.2.1 Activation. All visible alarm appliances provided within the residential dwelling unit for smoke detection notification shall be activated upon smoke detection. All visible alarm appliances provided within the residential dwelling unit for carbon monoxide detection notification shall be activated upon carbon monoxide detection.

11B-809.5.3 Interconnection. The same visible alarm appliances shall be permitted to provide notification of residential dwelling unit smoke detection, building fire alarm activation, and carbon monoxide detection.

11B-809.5.4 Prohibited use. Visible alarm appliances used to indicate residential dwelling unit smoke detection, carbon monoxide detection, or building fire alarm activation shall not be used for any other purpose within the residential dwelling unit.

11B-809.5.5 Residential dwelling unit primary entrance. Communication features shall be provided at the residential dwelling unit primary entrance complying with *Section 11B-809.5.5*.

CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

CHAPTER 12 – INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

(Matrix Adoption Tables are non-regulatory, intended only as an aid to the user.

See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD				BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter								X	X												
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)	X			X	X					X	X	X	X								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below		X	X											X	X	X			X		
Chapter / Section																					
1203.1				X	X																
1203.2				X	X																
1203.3				X	X																
Table 1203.3				X	X																
1203.4.1.1																			X		
1203.4.2																			X		
1203.5				X																	
1203.5.2.1				X	X																
1203.6			X																		
1204.1, <i>Exceptions 2 & 4</i>				X						X	X	X	X								
1205.1				X																	
1205.6		X																			
1205.7	X																				
1205.7.1	X																				
1206			X																		
1207.3, <i>Exception</i>				X	X																
1207.4				X	X																
1207.5		X																			
1208			X																		
1208.1				X																	
1208.2										X	X	X	X								
1208.4				X																	
1209			X																		
1209.1.1																			X		
1210.1				X	X																
1210.2										X	X	X	X								
1211				X	X																
1212				X																	
1224										X											
1225											X										
1226												X									
1227													X								
1230														X							
1231														X							
1235															X						
1236															X						
1237															X						
1240																X					
1241																X					
1242																X					
1243																X					
1250																		X			
1251																		X			
1252																		X			
1253																		X			
1254																		X			

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 111.

ENVIRONMENT OF CARE. Those features in a built health care entity that are created, structured, and maintained to support quality health care.

EXAM ROOM. A room with a bed, stretcher, or examination table and capability for periodic monitoring (e.g., measurement of blood pressure or pulse oximetry) in which procedures that do not require a specialized suite can be performed (e.g., pelvic examination, blood transfusion).

FLOOR AREA, CLEAR. The actual occupied area exclusive of fixed or wall-mounted cabinets, built-in shelves, toilet rooms, closets, lockers, wardrobes, alcoves, anterooms or vestibules.

GENERAL ACUTE-CARE HOSPITAL. A hospital, licensed by the California Department of Public Health, having a duly constituted governing body with overall administrative and professional responsibility and an organized medical staff which provides 24-hour inpatient care, including the basic services.

HANDWASHING STATION. An area that provides a handwashing fixture, cleansing agents and means for drying hands. Refer to the California Plumbing Code, Section 210.0 for the definition of handwashing fixture.

HOSPITAL. A general acute-care hospital, including those providing only acute medical rehabilitation center services and acute psychiatric hospitals.

HOUSEKEEPING. Services anywhere within a health care facility that include general cleaning and tidying and the provision and positioning of identified materials, e.g., soaps, towels, etc. (While routine disinfection protocols can be included in such a definition, the definition is not intended to include complex, nonroutine disinfection procedures nor the nonroutine disposition of hazardous materials such as potentially toxic drugs or other chemicals and radioactive wastes.)

LDR. Labor, Delivery, Recovery (an unlicensed patient bed)

LDRP. Labor, Delivery, Recovery, Postpartum (a licensed patient bed)

LICENSING AGENCY. The Department of Public Health, Licensing and Certification.

LOCATION TERMINOLOGY (terms for relationship to an area or room)

ADJACENT. Located next to but not necessarily connected to the identified area or room.

DIRECTLY ACCESSIBLE. Connected to the identified area or room through a doorway, pass-through, or other opening without going through an intervening room or public space.

IMMEDIATELY ACCESSIBLE. Available either in or adjacent to the identified area or room.

IN. Located within the identified area or room.

READILY ACCESSIBLE. Available on the same floor as the identified area or room.

MONOLITHIC. A surface free of fissures, cracks, perforations, and crevices.

MONOLITHIC CEILING. A ceiling constructed with a surface free of fissures, cracks, and crevices. Any penetrations

such as lights, diffusers, and access panels shall be sealed or gasketed. Lay-in ceilings are not considered “monolithic.”

NURSING UNIT. A designated patient care area of the hospital which is planned, organized, operated and maintained to function as a unit. It includes patient rooms with adequate support facilities, services and personnel providing nursing care and necessary management of patients.

OPERATING ROOM. A room specifically designed for the performance of surgical procedures. (In common understanding, this means most types of surgical procedures, especially those involving the administration of anesthesia, multiple personnel, recovery room access, and a fully controlled environment.)

HYBRID OPERATING ROOM. A room that meets the definition of an operating room and is also equipped to enable diagnostic imaging before, during, and after surgical procedures. Imaging equipment is permanently installed in the room and may include MRI, fixed single-plane and bi-plane tomographic imaging systems, and computed tomographic equipment.

Note: Use of portable imaging technology does not make an operating room a hybrid operating room.

OUTPATIENT SERVICE. An organizational unit of the hospital, which provides nonemergency healthcare services to patients.

PATIENT CARE LOCATIONS

BAY (patient). A space for human occupancy with one hard wall at the headwall and three soft walls (e.g., cubicle curtains or portable privacy screen).

CUBICLE. A space intended for human occupancy that has at least one opening and no door and is enclosed on three sides with full-height or partial-height partitions.

PATIENT CARE STATION. A designated space for a specific patient care function. This term does not imply any structural requirement (e.g., a Post-anesthesia Care Unit (PACU) can have 10 patient care stations of which three are rooms, three are cubicles, and four are bays).

PATIENT ROOM. Licensed patient bed rooms.

PERIOPERATIVE. Patient care and other related supportive activities before, during or after the operative event.

PROTECTIVE ENVIRONMENT. A bedded unit or patient room where severely immunosuppressed patients are cared for.

RESTRICTED AREA. A designated space with limited access eligibility. Such space has one or more of the following attributes: specific signage, physical barriers, security controls and protocols that delineate requirements for monitoring, maintenance, attire, and use. The term is often applied to specialized procedure suites, such as operating rooms and suites, interventional imaging, cardiac catheterization labs, angiography suites, etc.

ROOM. A space enclosed by hard walls and having a door. Where the word “room” or “office” is used, a separate, enclosed space for the one named function is intended. Other-

wise, the described area may be a specific space in another room or common area.

SCRUB SINK. A sink used to wash and scrub the hands and arms during the aseptic preparation for surgery, and equipped with a supply spout and controls as required for a handwashing fixture. Refer to the California Plumbing Code Sections 210.0 and 221.0.

SERVICE SINK. A sink located in a housekeeping room and designed for the purpose of cleaning mops and the disposal of waste water.

SUB-ACUTE CARE. A segment within a continuum of levels of care determined by patient acuity, clinical stability, and resource needs.

SUPPLEMENTAL SERVICE. An inpatient or outpatient service which is not required to be provided by law or regulation for licensure. A supplemental service, when provided, must accommodate the provisions of this section.

Note: See "BASIC SERVICES."

SURGICAL SERVICE SPACE. A space that includes the operating room(s) and service areas.

1224.4 GENERAL CONSTRUCTION.

1224.4.1 Services/systems and utilities. See Section 3416A.

1224.4.2 Environmental engineering and support service spaces. Spaces for dietary, laundry, morgue, ambulance entrance, receiving areas, power plants, mechanical equipment, incinerator, garbage can cleaning, automobile parking and storage areas for garbage, trash and medical gases shall be located and constructed to minimize noise, steam, odors, hazards and unsightliness in patient-care areas and bedrooms.

1224.4.3 Treatment spaces. Radiology, laboratory, pharmacy, physical therapy and service spaces serving only outpatients and similar outpatient service departments shall not be located in nursing units, surgical units, perinatal units, nursery areas, central sterilization rooms, food-service' areas, power plants, mechanical equipment rooms, maintenance shops, general storage, laundry, employees' dressing or housekeeping facilities.

Exception: Physical and occupational therapy spaces of a rehabilitation service may serve both outpatients and inpatients.

1224.4.4 Support areas for patient care. Identifiable spaces shall be provided for each function indicated in all Basic and applicable Supplemental Service Space sections with requirements for support areas. The following rooms and spaces are common to most types of health care facilities and the requirements associated with each, as listed below, shall be used unless modified under a specific Service Space section.

1224.4.4.1 Examination and treatment rooms.

1224.4.4.1.1 Examination room. Unless specified elsewhere, if an exam room is provided, it shall have a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet (7.4 m²), the least dimension of which shall be 8 feet (2438mm). The room shall contain a handwashing

fixture and accommodations for written or electronic documentation shall be provided.

1224.4.4.1.2 Treatment room. Unless specified elsewhere, if a treatment room is provided, it shall have a minimum clear floor area of 120 square feet (11.15 m²), the least dimension of which shall be 10 feet (3048 mm). A minimum of 3 feet (914 mm) is required between the sides and foot of the bed/gurney/table and any wall or other fixed obstruction. The room shall contain an examination light, a work counter for medical equipment, a handwashing fixture, cabinets, medication storage and counter space for writing or electronic documentation. Multi-bed treatment rooms shall have separate patient cubicles with a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet (7.4 m²) per cubicle. Each cubicle shall contain an examination light, counter and storage facilities. In multi-bed treatment rooms, a handwashing fixture shall be provided in the room for each three or fewer cubicles.

1224.4.4.1.3 Airborne infection isolation exam/treatment room. When provided, the airborne infection isolation room shall be an exam/treatment room, shall be labeled with the words "Airborne Infection Room", and provide the following:

1. Capacity. Each airborne infection isolation exam/treatment room shall contain only one examination table or recliner.
2. Handwashing station. A handwashing station shall be located in each airborne infection isolation exam/treatment room.
3. Gowning and storage area. An area for gowning and storage of clean and soiled materials shall be located directly outside or inside the entry door to the airborne infection isolation exam/treatment room.
4. Doors. Room doors shall be self-closing and include latching devices.
5. Sealed-tight room. Room perimeter walls, ceiling, floors, doors and penetration shall be sealed tightly to minimize air infiltration from the outside or from other spaces.
6. Ventilation. The ventilation shall be provided as required by the California Mechanical Code for airborne infection isolation room.

1224.4.4.1.3.1 Airborne infection isolation exam/treatment anteroom. An airborne infection isolation anteroom is not required; however, when an anteroom is provided, it shall meet the following requirements:

1. The anteroom shall provide space for persons to don personal protective equipment before entering the patient room.
2. All doors to the anteroom shall have self-closing devices.
3. The anteroom shall provide storage of personal protective equipment (e.g. respirators, gowns, gloves) and clean equipment.

4. Ventilation shall be provided in the anteroom as required by the California Mechanical Code for airborne infection isolation anteroom.

1224.4.4.2 Administrative center(s) or nurse station(s). This area shall have space for counters and storage and at least one hand-washing station shall be located in, adjacent to, or directly accessible to the administrative center or nurse station. It may be combined with or include centers for reception, charting and communication.

1224.4.4.3 Specimen and blood collection facilities.

1224.4.4.3.1 Specimen collection facilities. When provided, specimen collection facilities shall comply with the following requirements:

1. Urine collection rooms shall be equipped with a water closet and handwashing station.
Exception: The handwashing station may be located immediately outside the collection room when the specimen is used for drug testing.
2. Use of the toilet room provided within the examination and treatment room shall be permitted for specimen collection.

1224.4.4.3.2 Blood collection facilities. When provided, blood collection facilities shall comply with the following requirements:

1. Space for a chair and work counter shall be provided.
2. A handwashing station shall be provided.

1224.4.4.4 Medication station. Provision shall be made for distribution of medications. This shall be done from a medication preparation room or from a self-contained dispensing unit.

1224.4.4.4.1 Medication preparation room. If provided, this room shall be directly accessible from the nursing station. When a medicine preparation room is to be used to store one or more self-contained medicine dispensing units, the room shall be designed with adequate space to prepare medicines with the self-contained medicine dispensing unit(s) present. Medicine preparation rooms shall include:

1. Work counter.
2. Handwashing station.
3. Refrigerator.
4. Locked storage for controlled drugs.

1224.4.4.4.2 Self-contained medication dispensing unit. If provided, a self-contained medicine dispensing unit shall be located at the nurses' station, in the clean utility room, or in an alcove.

1224.4.4.5 Nourishment area or room. Nourishment areas or rooms required in patient care areas shall include the following:

1. Sink
2. Work counter
3. Refrigerator

4. Storage cabinets
5. Equipment for hot and cold nourishment between scheduled meals.
6. The nourishment shall include space for trays and dishes used for nonscheduled meal service.
7. Provisions and space shall be included for separate temporary storage of unused and soiled dietary trays not picked up at mealtime.
8. Handwashing fixtures separate from the nourishment sink shall be in or adjacent to the nourishment area.

1224.4.4.6 Clean utility/workroom. The clean workroom or clean supply room shall be separate from and have no connection with the soiled workroom or soiled holding room. If the room is used for preparing patient care items, it shall contain the following:

1. Work counter
2. Handwashing station
3. Storage facilities for clean and sterile supplies

1224.4.4.6.1 Clean supply room. If the room is used only for storage and holding as part of a system for distribution of clean and sterile materials, the work counter or a handwashing station may be omitted.

1224.4.4.7 Soiled utility/workroom. The soiled workroom or soiled holding room shall be separate from and have no connection with either clean workrooms or clean supply rooms. The soiled utility/workroom shall contain:

1. Clinical sink (or equivalent flushing-rim fixture).
2. Handwashing station
3. Work counter
4. Space for separate covered containers for soiled linen and/or waste

1224.4.4.7.1 Soiled holding room. Rooms used only for temporary holding soiled material may omit the clinical sink and work counter. If the flushing-rim clinical sink is eliminated, facilities for cleaning bedpans shall be provided elsewhere.

1224.4.5 Outpatient waiting rooms. Waiting rooms for outpatients shall provide a seating area and space for wheelchairs and have public corridor access. Public toilets, drinking fountains and telephones shall be readily accessible.

Note: One waiting area may serve more than one department or service.

1224.4.5.1 Outpatient access. If x-ray examinations are to be performed on outpatients, outpatient access to the radiological spaces shall not traverse a nursing unit.

Exception: Satellite radiology, laboratory, pharmacy, and physical and occupational therapy space serving inpatients may be located in nursing units and inpatient treatment areas.

1224.4.6 Miscellaneous requirements.

1224.4.6.1 Station outlets. Station outlets for oxygen, vacuum, and medical air shall comply with Table 1224.4.6.1.

INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

**TABLE 1224.4.6.1
STATION OUTLETS FOR OXYGEN, VACUUM (SUCTION), AND MEDICAL AIR^{1, 6}**

	LOCATIONS	OXYGEN	VACUUM	MEDICAL AIR
1	Patient rooms (medical/surgical unit)	1/bed	1/bed	—
2	Examination or treatment (medical/surgical unit and postpartum care)	1/room	1/room	—
3	Airborne infection isolation or protective environment rooms (medical/surgical unit)	1/bed	1/bed	—
4	Seclusion room (medical/surgical unit and postpartum care)	1/bed	1/bed	—
5	Intensive care (general)	3/bed	3/bed	1/bed
6	Airborne infection isolation	3/bed	3/bed	1/bed
7	Coronary-care service space	3/bed	2/bed	1/bed
8	Pediatric intensive care	3/bed	3/bed	1/bed
9	Newborn intensive care	3/bassinets	3/bassinets	3/bassinets
10	Newborn nursery (full term)	1/4 bassinets ²	1/4 bassinets ²	1/4 bassinets ²
11	Pediatric and adolescent	1/bed	1/bed	1/bed
12	Pediatric nursery	1/bassinets	1/bassinets	1/bassinets
13	Psychiatric patient room	—	—	—
14	Seclusion treatment room	—	—	—
15	General operating room	2/room	3/room	—
16	Cardio, ortho, neurological	2/room	3/room	—
17	Orthopedic surgery	2/room	3/room	—
18	Surgical cysto and endo	1/room	3/room	—
19	Post-anesthesia care unit	1/bed	3/bed	1/bed
20	Anesthesia workroom	1 per workstation	—	1 per workstation
21	Endoscopy procedure room	1/room	3/room	—
22	Postpartum bedroom	1/bed	1/bed	—
23	Cesarean operating/delivery room	2/room	3/room	1/room
24	Infant resuscitation space ⁴	1/bassinets	1/bassinets	1/bassinets
25	Labor room	1/room	1/room	—
26	OB recovery room	1/bed	3/bed	—
27	Labor/delivery/recovery (LDR) ⁵	1/bed	1/bed	—
28	Labor/delivery/recovery/postpartum (LDRP) ⁵	1/bed	1/bed	—
29	Initial emergency management	1/bed	1/bed	1/bed
30	Triage area (definitive emergency care)	1/station	1/station	—
31	Definitive emergency care examination or treatment rooms	1/bed	1/bed	1/bed
32	Definitive emergency care observation unit	1/bed	1/bed	—
33	Trauma/cardiac room(s)	2/bed	3/bed	1/bed
34	Orthopedic and cast room	1/room	1/room	—
35	Cardiac catheterization lab	2/bed	2/bed	2/bed
36	Autopsy room	—	1 per workstation	—
37	MRI	1/room	1/room	1/room
38	Interventional imaging procedure room	2/room	2/room	1/room
39	Hyperbaric suite pre-procedure/patient holding area	2/station	2/station	—
40	Electroconvulsive therapy procedure room	1/room	1/room	—

1. For any area or room not described above, the facility clinical staff shall determine outlet requirements after consultation with the enforcing agency.

2. Four bassinets may share one outlet that is accessible to each bassinet.

3. Not used.

4. When infant resuscitation takes place in a room such as cesarean section/delivery or LDRP, then the infant resuscitation services must be provided in that room in addition to the minimum service required for the mother.

5. One outlet for mother and one for each bassinet.

6. Renovation projects of existing spaces where the existing function is not changed, are not required to comply with the requirements of this table.

**TABLE 1224.4.11
ACCEPTABLE CEILING AND CARPET LOCATIONS**

AREAS/ROOMS ^{3,4}	GENERAL ACUTE CARE HOSPITAL CEILING/CARPET		ACUTE PSYCHIATRIC HOSPITAL CEILING/ CARPET		SKILLED NURSING AND INTERMEDIATE-CARE FACILITIES CEILING/CARPET		CLINIC CEILING/ CARPET	
Patient bedrooms	3	*	3	*	3	*	—	—
Patient corridors/hallways	3	*	3	*	3	*	3	*
Airborne infection isolation rooms	2	N	2	N	2	N	2	N
Protective environment rooms	1	N	1	N	1	N	-	-
Nurses' or administration station	3	Y	3	Y	3	Y	3	Y
Utility rooms	2	N	2	N	2	N	2	N
Surgical units ²	2	N	—	—	—	—	2	N
Operation rooms	1	N	—	—	—	—	1	N
Surgical corridors/hallways	2	N	—	—	—	—	2	N
Recovery	3	N	—	—	—	—	3	N
Radiological unit ²	3	*	3	*	—	—	3	—
X-ray rooms ¹	3	N	3	N	—	—	3	N
Treatment rooms ²	2	N	3	N	2	N	2	N
Examination rooms	3	*	3	*	3	*	3	*
Administration	4	Y	4	Y	4	Y	4	Y
Central sterile supply	2	N	2	N	2	N	2	N
Clinical laboratories	3	N	3	N	—	—	3	N
Pharmacy	3	*	3	*	3	*	3	*
Morgue and autopsy	3	N	—	—	—	—	—	—
General storage rooms	3	N	3	N	3	N	3	N
Housekeeping rooms	2	N	2	N	2	N	2	N
Laundry	1 ⁵	N	1 ⁵	N	1 ⁵	N	—	—
Soiled linen	2	N	3	N	3	N	3	N
Clean linen	3	N	3	N	3	N	3	N
Kitchens	1 ⁵	N	1 ⁵	N	1 ⁵	N	1 ⁵	N
Dining rooms	3	*	3	*	3	*	3	*
Dishwasher rooms	2	N	2	N	2	N	2	N
Dietary day storage	2	N	2	N	2	N	—	—
Catheterization laboratory	1	N	—	—	—	—	—	—
Chronic dialysis	3	*	—	—	—	—	3	*
Coronary care	3	*	—	—	—	—	—	—
Dental	3	*	—	—	—	—	3	*
Hydrotherapy	2	N	2	N	2	N	2	N
Intensive-care nursery	3	*	—	—	—	—	—	—
Intensive care	3	*	—	—	—	—	—	—
Occupational therapy	3	*	3	*	3	*	3	*
Obstetrical unit ²	3	*	—	—	—	—	—	—
Delivery rooms	1	N	—	—	—	—	—	—
Labor rooms, LDRP and LDR	3	N	—	—	—	—	—	—
Nurseries	3	N	—	—	—	—	—	—
Physical therapy	3	*	3	*	3	*	3	*
Radiation therapy	3	*	—	—	—	—	3	*
Speech pathology and audiology	3	Y	3	Y	3	Y	3	Y

Ceilings:

1 – Continuous monolithic surface equal in smoothness to enamel plaster.

2 – Smooth and easily cleanable without perforations or fissures.

3 – Pin perforated, fine fissured, or lightly textured.

4 – Any finish meeting code requirements.

Carpets:

Yes = Y

No = N

* Upon approval by the licensing agency with adequate maintenance procedure. However, should the carpet not be maintained adequately, the licensing agency has the right to have it removed and replaced with another acceptable material.

Footnotes:

1. Carpet permitted in mammography.

2. Except those rooms specified otherwise.

3. For rooms not listed, contact the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD).

4. Table applies to new construction, additions, remodels, and conversions. The patching and replacement of existing materials will be permitted.

5. Lay-in ceiling meeting the requirements of Section 1224.4.11.4.1.7 may be substituted in laundry and kitchens.

1224.4.11.1.1 Coved base. Resilient flooring, if used in toilet and bathing rooms, shall be continuous and extend upward onto the wall at least 5 inches (127 mm) to minimize moisture infiltration. Wood bases are prohibited except in waiting areas and administration departments.

1224.4.11.1.2 Food preparation areas. Floors in areas used for food preparation and assembly shall be water-resistant. Floor surfaces, including tile joints, shall be resistant to food acids. Floor construction in dietary and food preparation areas shall be free of spaces that can harbor pests.

1224.4.11.1.3 Wet cleaning. In all areas subject to frequent wet-cleaning methods, flooring materials shall not be physically affected by germicidal or other types of cleaning solutions.

1224.4.11.1.4 Airborne infection isolation, airborne infection isolation exam/treatment and protective environment rooms. These rooms and anterooms shall have seamless flooring with integral coved base.

1224.4.11.2 Wall bases.

1224.4.11.2.1 Material. The material and textures of bases and the installation thereof shall be such as to minimize dust-catching surfaces, moisture, infiltration and the harboring of vermin.

Exception: In locations where carpet is permitted as a floor finish material, the use of carpeted base (coved or strip base) up to a maximum height of 5 inches (127 mm) is also permissible.

1224.4.11.2.2 Wet cleaning. Floors and wall bases in operating rooms, delivery rooms, emergency operating rooms, cast rooms, interventional rooms and special procedure rooms shall be monolithic and constructed without joints. The floors and wall bases of kitchens, soiled and clean utility rooms, housekeeping rooms with mop sinks, patient, public and staff sanitary facilities and other areas subject to frequent wet cleaning, shall also be homogeneous, but may have tightly sealed joints and shall be constructed without voids at the intersection of floor and wall surfaces.

1224.4.11.3 Wall finishes. Wall finishes shall comply with the following requirements:

1. Wall finishes shall be washable. In the vicinity of plumbing fixtures, wall finishes shall be smooth, scrubbable and water-resistant.
2. Wall finishes in areas such as operating rooms, delivery rooms and trauma rooms shall be monolithic, scrubbable and able to withstand cleaning with chemicals.
3. Wall finishes in operating rooms, cesarean delivery rooms, isolation rooms and sterile processing rooms shall be free of fissures,

open joints or crevices that may retain or permit passage of dirt particles.

4. Wall finishes in areas such as clean corridors, central sterile supply spaces, specialized radiographic rooms and minor surgical procedure rooms shall be washable, smooth and able to withstand cleaning with chemicals.
5. Wall areas penetrated by pipes, ducts and conduits shall be tightly sealed to minimize entry of rodents and insects. Joints of structural elements shall be similarly sealed.
6. Wall finish requirements of Section 1224.4.11.3 do not apply to boiler rooms, mechanical equipment rooms, administration departments, other offices, enclosed stairways, maintenance shops and similar spaces.

1224.4.11.3.1 Dietary and food preparation areas. Dietary and food preparation areas shall comply with the following requirements:

1. In dietary and food preparation areas, wall construction, finish, and trim, including the joints between the walls and the floors, shall be free of spaces that can harbor insects and rodents.
2. Wall surfaces in wet areas (e.g., kitchens, environmental services closets) shall be monolithic and all seams shall be covered and/or sealed.

1224.4.11.4 Ceilings. Ceilings in areas occupied by patients and the public shall be cleanable with the use of routine housekeeping equipment. Acoustic and lay-in ceiling, where used, shall not create ledges or crevices.

1224.4.11.4.1 Ceiling finishes. Ceiling finishes shall comply with Table 1224.4.11 and the following requirements:

Semirestricted areas:

1. Ceiling finishes in semirestricted areas such as airborne infection isolation exam/treatment rooms, surgical corridors, central sterile supply spaces and minor surgical procedure rooms, shall be nonabsorptive, nonperforated, capable of withstanding cleaning with chemicals, and without crevices that can harbor mold and bacterial growth.
2. If a lay-in ceiling is provided in semirestricted areas, it shall be gasketed or each ceiling tile shall weigh at least one pound per square foot to prevent the passage of particles from the cavity above the ceiling plane into the semirestricted environment. Perforated, tegular, serrated cut or highly textured tiles are not acceptable.

observation into the room shall be arranged or curtailed as necessary for patient privacy. In multiple-bed rooms, visual privacy from casual observation by other patients and visitors shall be provided for each patient. The design for privacy shall not restrict patient access to the entrance, lavatory, or toilet room.

1224.14.1.10 Grab bars. Grab bars shall be installed in accordance with Section 1224.4.18.

1224.14.1.11 Room identification. Each patient room shall be labeled with an identification number, letter or combination of the two.

1224.14.2 Service areas. Unless otherwise indicated, provision for the services listed below shall be in or immediately accessible to each nursing unit. The size and location of each service area will depend upon the numbers and types of beds served. Identifiable spaces are required for each of the indicated functions. Each service area may be arranged and located to serve more than one nursing unit but, unless noted otherwise, at least one such service area shall be provided on each nursing floor. Where the words "room" or "offices" are used, a separate, enclosed space for the one named function is intended; otherwise, the described area may be specific space in another room or common area.

1224.14.2.1 Administrative center(s) or nurse station(s). Administrative center(s) or nurse station shall be provided in accordance with Section 1224.4.4.2.

1224.14.2.2 Nurse or supervisor office.

1224.14.2.3 Toilet room(s) conveniently located for staff use.

1224.14.2.4 Multipurpose room(s) Multipurpose rooms shall be provided for staff, patients, patients' families for patient conferences, reports, education, training sessions, and consultation. These rooms must be readily accessible to each nursing unit. One such room may serve several nursing units and/or departments.

1224.14.2.5 Examination or treatment room(s). Examination or treatment rooms are optional. If provided, provision shall be made to preserve patient privacy from observation from outside the exam room though an open door.

1224.14.2.6 Clean utility/workroom. Clean utility/workroom shall be provided in accordance with to Section 1224.4.4.6.

1224.14.2.7 Soiled workroom or soiled holding room. Soiled workroom or soiled holding room shall be provided in accordance with Section 1224.4.4.7.

1224.14.2.8 Medication station. Medication station shall be provided in accordance with Section 1224.4.4.4.

1224.14.2.9 Clean linen storage. Each nursing unit shall contain a designated area for clean linen storage. This may be within the clean utility room or a separate closet.

1224.14.2.10 Nourishment area. A nourishment area or room shall be provided in accordance with Section 1224.4.4.5.

1224.14.2.11 Ice machine. Each nursing unit shall have equipment to provide ice for treatments and nourishment. Ice making equipment may be in the clean utility room/holding room or at the nourishment station. Ice intended for human consumption shall be from self-dispensing icemakers.

1224.14.2.12 Equipment storage room. Appropriate room(s) shall be provided for storage of equipment necessary for patient care. Each unit shall provide not less than 10 square feet (0.93 m²) per patient bed.

1224.14.2.13 Gurneys and wheelchairs. Provide a storage room or alcove for gurneys and wheelchairs which shall be a minimum of 15 square feet (1.39 m²).

1224.14.2.14 Showers and bathtubs. When individual bathing facilities are not provided in patient rooms, there shall be at least one shower and/or bathtub for each 12 beds without such facilities. Each bathtub or shower shall be in an individual room or enclosure that provides privacy for bathing, drying, and dressing.

1224.14.2.14.1 Special bathing facilities. Special bathing facilities, including space for attendant, shall be provided for patients on gurneys, carts, and wheelchairs at the ratio of one per 100 beds or a fraction thereof. The special bathing facility may be located in a nursing unit on a separate floor.

1224.14.2.15 Patient toilet room(s). Common patient toilet room(s), in addition to those serving bed areas, shall be located adjacent to multipurpose room(s) and within, or directly accessible to each central bathing facility.

1224.14.2.16 Emergency equipment storage. Space shall be provided for emergency equipment that is under direct control of the nursing staff, such as a cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) cart. This space shall be directly accessible from the nursing station, but out of normal traffic.

1224.14.2.17 Housekeeping room.

1224.14.2.18 Grab bars. Grab bars shall be installed in accordance with Section 1224.4.18.

1224.14.3 Airborne infection isolation rooms.

1224.14.3.1 General. Single rooms shall be provided for the isolation of patients with airborne communicable disease at a ratio of one room for each 35 licensed beds, or major fraction thereof. At least one airborne infection isolation room shall be provided. Airborne infection isolation rooms shall be labeled with the words "Airborne Infection Room" on or adjacent to the anteroom side of the door between the isolation room and the anteroom.

Exceptions:

1. Acute psychiatric hospitals shall provide airborne infection isolation rooms at the ratio of one room for each 50 beds, or major fraction thereof.

2. Airborne infection isolation rooms are not required for chemical dependency recovery services.

1224.14.3.2 Anteroom doors. Airborne infection isolation room(s) shall have self-closing and latching devices on all anteroom doors.

1224.14.3.3 Anteroom. A separate anteroom shall be provided between the airborne infection isolation room and the corridor, which shall constitute the primary entrance to the airborne infection isolation room. This anteroom shall have a handwashing fixture, work counter at least 3 feet (914 mm) long, cabinets and space to gown and to store clean and soiled materials. There shall be a view window from the anteroom to the isolation room and means to allow for airflow from the anteroom into the airborne infection isolation room. Doors shall be aligned to allow large equipment to be wheeled into the airborne infection isolation room unless a secondary door complying with Section 1224.14.3.2 is provided. One anteroom may serve no more than two airborne infection isolation rooms.

1224.14.3.4 Secondary entry. When a secondary entry is provided, the secondary doors shall be provided with locking devices which are readily operable from the room side and which are readily operable by the facility staff on the other side. When key locks are used on isolation rooms, keys shall be located at the nurses' station in a prominent readily accessible location.

1224.14.3.5 Sealed-tight room. Airborne infection isolation room perimeter walls, ceilings, floors, doors, and penetrations shall be sealed tightly to minimize air infiltration from the outside or from other spaces.

1224.14.3.6 Adjoining toilet room. Each isolation room shall have its own directly accessible toilet room with an emergency nurse call system, a lavatory, a shower providing a seat or a space for a shower chair and a toilet equipped with a bedpan flushing attachment with a vacuum breaker.

1224.14.4 Protective environment room(s).

1224.14.4.1 General. Protective environment rooms for the protection of certain immunosuppressed patients may be provided by the facility. Protective environment rooms shall be labeled "Protective Environment Room" on or adjacent to the anteroom side of the door between the isolation room and the anteroom. Protective environment rooms shall contain only one bed.

1224.14.4.2 Anteroom doors. Protective environment room (s) shall have self-closing and latching devices on all anteroom doors.

1224.14.4.3 Anteroom. A separate anteroom shall be provided between the protective environment room and the corridor, hallway or adjoining space which shall constitute the only entrance to the protective environment room. This anteroom shall have a handwashing fixture, work counter at least 3 feet (914 mm) long, cab-

inets and space to gown and to store clean and soiled materials. There shall be a view window from the anteroom to the protective environment room. There shall be means to allow for airflow from the protective environment room into the anteroom. Anteroom doors shall be aligned so that large equipment can be wheeled into the protective environment room. One anteroom may serve no more than one protective environment room.

Exception: Alternate designs for protective environment rooms, without individual anterooms, may be approved by the enforcement agency when it can be demonstrated that the alternate design meets the requirements of the California Mechanical Code and does not compromise or alter any health or fire protection component, assembly or system.

1224.14.4.4 Adjoining toilet room. Room shall meet the requirements of Section 1224.14.3.6.

1224.14.4.5 Sealed-tight room. Protective environment room perimeter walls, ceiling, floors, doors, and penetrations shall be sealed tightly to minimize air infiltration from the outside or from other spaces.

1224.14.5 Seclusion room(s). If provided, the hospital shall provide one or more single bedrooms for patients needing close supervision for medical and/or psychiatric care. This may be part of the psychiatric unit described in Section 1224.31. If the single bedroom(s) is part of the acute-care nursing unit, the provisions of Section 1224.14.1 shall apply, with the following exceptions: each room shall be for single occupancy; each shall be located to permit staff observation of the entrance, preferably adjacent to the nurses' station; and each shall be designed to minimize the potential for escape, hiding, injury or suicide. If vision panels are used for observation of patients, the arrangement shall insure patient privacy and prevent casual observation by visitors and other patients.

1224.15 SURGICAL SERVICE SPACE.

1224.15.1 General. A minimum of one operating room is required. The surgical service space shall be divided into two designated areas: 1) semi-restricted areas (e.g. storage areas for clean and sterile supplies, sterile processing rooms, scrub stations, and corridors leading to restricted areas of the surgical suite, etc.); and 2) restricted areas (e.g. operating rooms, hybrid operating rooms, sterile procedure rooms, cardiac catheterization labs, etc.) that can be reached only through a semi-restricted area. The surgical service space shall be located and arranged to provide direct support from the anesthesia/recovery service space with a common door to prevent nonrelated traffic through the surgical service space.

An operating room suite design with a sterile core shall provide for no cross traffic of staff and supplies from the decontaminated/soiled areas to the sterile/clean areas. The use of facilities outside the operating room for soiled/decontaminated processing and clean assembly and sterile processing shall be designed to move the flow of goods

1224.16.5.5 Storage. Storage shall be provided for gurneys, supplies and equipment.

1224.16.6 Support areas for staff. Staff toilet rooms shall be immediately accessible to the postoperative patient care area(s) to maintain staff availability to patients.

1224.16.7 Support areas for patients, families, and visitors.

1224.16.7.1 Waiting area. A waiting area, in compliance with Section 1224.4.5, shall be provided.

1224.16.7.2 Patient change area. A changing area shall be provided for outpatient use in perioperative areas in support of surgical suites that provide outpatient procedures. The changing area shall include space for changing or gowning, provisions for storing patients' belongings during the procedure, and access to patient toilet(s).

1224.17 CLINICAL LABORATORY SERVICE SPACE.

1224.17.1 General requirements. All hospitals shall provide space and equipment to perform urinalysis, complete blood counts, hemoglobin blood typing and cross matching. If laboratory facilities for bacteriological, serological, pathological and additional hematological procedures are not available in the community, then space, equipment and supplies for such procedures shall be provided. The following physical facilities shall be provided:

1. Laboratory work space.
2. Refrigerated blood storage facilities for transfusions shall be provided. Blood storage refrigerator shall be equipped with temperature-monitoring and alarm signals that are monitored continuously.
3. Handwashing fixture.

1224.18 RADIOLOGICAL/DIAGNOSTIC IMAGING SERVICE SPACE. Space and equipment shall be provided to accommodate all required elements, and any additional imaging modalities included in the service space, as required in this section. If interventional or image-guided procedures are performed in the imaging services area, additional provisions shall be as described in Section 1224.28 Supplemental Surgery and other Special Procedure Services. If nuclear medicine is provided in the imaging services area, spaces shall also comply with the requirements described in Section 1224.34 Nuclear Medicine.

1224.18.1 Minimum requirements. Hospital shall provide a minimum of:

1. One fluoroscopy room, which can also provide x-ray examination services.
2. Space for processing images.
3. A toilet room shall adjoin and be directly accessible to each fluoroscopy room. In addition to the fluoroscopy toilet rooms, common patient toilet room facilities shall be located in the radiological/diagnostic imaging service space.
4. An office or other suitable area for viewing and reporting radiographic examination.

5. Storage spaces for all image equipment, supplies and copies of reports.

6. Handwashing stations located within the unit.

7. Dressing room facilities.

1224.18.1.1 Radiation protection. A certified physicist or other qualified expert shall specify the type, location, and amount of radiation protection to be installed in accordance with the final approved department layout and equipment selections. Where protected alcoves with view windows are required, a minimum of 1'-6" (0.45 meter) between the view window and the outside partition edge shall be provided. Radiation protection requirements shall be incorporated into the construction documents and comply with Chapter 31C and the requirements of California Radiation Control Regulations, California Code of Regulations, Title 17, Division 1, Chapter 5, and Subchapter 4.

1224.18.2 Angiography. If provided, diagnostic angiography space shall accommodate the following:

1. A control room with a view window to permit full view of the patient.
2. A scrub sink located outside the staff entry to the procedure room.
3. Patient holding area shall accommodate at least one patient gurney with a minimum of 3-foot (914 mm) clearance on the long side.
4. Storage for portable equipment and catheters shall be provided.

1224.18.2.1 Interventional angiography procedures. If interventional angiography procedures are to be performed in the angiography room, the suite shall comply with interventional imaging requirements in Section 1224.28.4. If cardiac catheterization procedures are performed refer to Section 1224.28.2.

1224.18.3 Computerized tomography (CT) scanning. If provided, CT space shall accommodate the following:

1224.18.3.1 Spaces required. If provided, CT scan spaces shall accommodate the equipment with a minimum of 3 feet (914 mm) on all sides of the equipment, together with the following:

1. A control room shall be provided that is designed to accommodate the computer and other controls for the equipment. A view window shall be provided to permit view of the patient.
2. A patient toilet room convenient to the procedure room.

1224.18.3.2 Intraoperative computerized tomography. If provided, intraoperative CT scanning spaces shall comply with Section 1224.28.5.

1224.18.4 Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). If provided, the MRI room shall accommodate the equipment with a minimum of 3 feet (914 mm) on all sides of the equipment, together with the following:

1. A control room shall be provided with full view of the patient in the MRI scanner. The control console shall

be positioned so the operator has a full view of the approach and entrance to the MRI scanner room.

2. An anteroom or area visible from the control room shall be located outside the MRI scanner room so that patients, health care personnel, and other employees must pass through it before entering the scanning area and control room. The room or area shall be outside the restricted areas of the MRI's magnetic field.

3. A computer room shall be provided.

1224.18.4.1 Handwashing station. Handwashing station(s) shall be immediately accessible to the MRI scanner room.

1224.18.4.2 Wall, floor, and ceiling assemblies. Wall, floor, and ceiling assemblies shall accommodate the installation of required radio frequency (RF)-shielded assemblies. All doors, windows, and penetrations into the RF-shielded enclosure shall be RF-shielded. As well as RF shielding, individual sites may also require magnetic shielding on some or all surfaces to contain portions of the magnetic field not contained by the RF shield.

1224.18.4.3 Lighted sign. MRI rooms shall be clearly marked with a red light and lighted sign stating, "The Magnet Is On". This light and sign are to be lighted at all times and have a backup energy source to remain illuminated for at least 24 hours in the event of a loss of power.

1224.18.4.4 Magnetic field strength identification. Facilities shall use finishes or markings to identify the critical values of the magnetic field surrounding the MRI scanner, including the 5-gauss exclusion zone or other magnetic field strength values that may impair the operation of equipment.

1224.18.4.5 Special ventilation requirements. Where superconducting MRI scanners are installed, an insulated cryogen quench exhaust pipe as well as room exhaust and pressure equalization shall be provided to protect occupants in the event of a cryogen breach.

1224.18.4.6 Intraoperative magnetic resonance imaging. If provided, the intraoperative magnetic resonance imaging (iMRI) suite shall comply with Section 1224.28.5.

1224.18.5 Ultrasound. When provided, the ultrasound room shall comply with the following:

1224.18.5.1 Space requirements.

1. Area. Rooms used for ultrasound examination/treatment shall have a minimum clear floor area of 120 square feet (11.15 m²).
2. Clearances. A minimum clear dimension of 3 feet (914 mm) shall be provided on three sides of the table/stretcher.

1224.18.5.2 Handwashing fixture. A handwashing fixture shall be provided within the procedure room.

1224.18.5.3 Patient toilet(s). A patient toilet shall be directly accessible to the ultrasound procedure room.

The patient toilet may be permitted to serve more than one ultrasound procedure room.

1224.18.6 Mammography. When provided, the mammography room shall comply with the following:

1224.18.6.1 Space requirements.

1. Area. Mammography rooms shall be a minimum of 100 square feet (9.3 m²).
2. Shielded alcove. Each x-ray room shall include a shielded control alcove. For mammography machines with built-in shielding for the operator, omission of the alcove shall be permitted when approved by the certified physicist.

1224.18.6.2 Handwashing fixture. A handwashing fixture shall be provided within the procedure room.

1224.18.7 Support spaces. The following spaces are common to the imaging service area and are minimum requirements unless stated otherwise:

1224.18.7.1 Patient's toilet room(s). In service spaces with procedure rooms that do not have dedicated patient toilets, provide a minimum of one patient toilet room within the service space.

1224.18.7.2 Patient dressing areas. Dressing areas shall be provided adjacent to the imaging rooms.

1224.18.7.3 Staff facilities. In service space of three or more procedure rooms, staff toilet room(s) internal to the service space shall be provided.

1224.18.7.4 Film storage (active). If film systems are used, provide the following:

1. A room with cabinet or shelves for filing patient film for immediate retrieval shall be provided.
2. Storage facilities for unexposed film which shall include protection of film against exposure or damage.

1224.18.7.5 Locked storage. Provision shall be made for locked storage of medications and drugs.

1224.19 PHARMACEUTICAL SERVICE SPACE

1224.19.1 Licensed pharmacy. All hospitals having a licensed capacity of 100 or more beds shall have a pharmacy on the premises licensed by the California Board of Pharmacy.

Note: See General Acute Care Hospitals §70263(a), Article 3, Chapter 1, Division 5, Title 22, California Code of Regulations, for requirements concerning hospitals with fewer than 100 beds. The pharmacy room or service space shall conform to the requirements of § 1751, Article 7, Division 17, Title 16, California Code of Regulations as enforced by the California Board of Pharmacy.

1224.19.1.1 Handwashing fixture. Handwashing fixture(s) shall be provided within each separate room where open medication is handled, or in an anteroom, or immediately outside the room where open medication is handled, still within the pharmaceutical service space.

Exception: ISO Class 5 sterile preparation areas (e.g., chemotherapy and intravenous solutions) and

1224.32.3.8 Service areas. Individual rooms shall be provided as indicated in the following standards; otherwise, alcoves or other open spaces that do not interfere with traffic may be used.

1224.32.3.8.1 Services. The following services shall be provided:

1. **Control/nurse station.** This shall be located to restrict unauthorized traffic into the service space.
2. **Soiled workroom or soiled holding room.** See Section 1224.4.4.7.
3. **Fluid waste disposal.**

1224.32.3.8.2 Shared services. The following services shall be provided and may be shared with the surgical facilities. Where shared, areas shall be arranged to avoid direct traffic between the delivery and operating rooms

1224.32.3.8.2.1 Supervisor's office or station. Office or station shall be a minimum of 80 square feet (7.43 m²) and have a desk.

1224.32.3.8.2.2 Waiting room. This room shall have toilet rooms, telephone(s) and drinking fountains that are immediately accessible. The toilet rooms shall contain a lavatory.

1224.32.3.8.2.3 Drug distribution station. Shall have a handwashing fixture and provisions for controlled storage, preparation and distribution of medication.

1224.32.3.8.2.4 Scrub facilities for cesarean operating or delivery rooms(s). Two positions shall be provided adjacent to entrance to the first cesarean operating room. Provide one additional scrub sink per cesarean or delivery operating room. Scrub facilities shall be arranged to minimize any splatter on nearby personnel or supply carts. In new construction, provide view windows at scrub stations to permit the observation of room interiors.

1224.32.3.8.2.5 Clean utility room. A clean utility room shall be provided if clean materials are assembled within the obstetrical service space prior to use. If a clean utility room is provided see Section 1224.4.4.6.

1224.32.3.8.2.6 Storage.

1. **Clean sterile storage area** readily accessible to the delivery room.
2. **Equipment storage room(s)** for equipment and supplies used in the obstetrical service space.

1224.32.3.8.2.7 Workroom. An anesthesia workroom for cleaning, testing and storing anesthesia equipment. It shall contain a work counter, sink, and provisions for separation of clean and soiled items.

1224.32.3.8.2.8 Male and female staff clothing change areas. The clothing change area shall be

designed to encourage one-way traffic and eliminate cross-traffic between clean and contaminated personnel. The area shall contain lockers, showers, toilets, handwashing fixtures, and space for donning and disposing scrub suits and booties.

1224.32.3.8.2.9 Staff lounge. Lounge and toilet room facilities for obstetrical staff shall be readily accessible to cesarean operating rooms(s), delivery room(s), labor rooms(s) and recovery room(s). Each toilet room shall contain a handwashing station.

1224.32.3.8.2.10 On-call room. An on-call room(s) for physician and/or staff shall be provided, but may be located elsewhere in the facility.

1224.32.3.8.2.11 Housekeeping room.

1224.32.4 LDR and LDRP facilities.

1224.32.4.1 Location. LDR room(s) may be located in a separate LDR service space or as part of the cesarean/delivery service space. The postpartum unit may contain LDRP rooms.

1224.32.4.2 Space requirements. These rooms shall have a minimum of 250 square feet (23.23 m²) of clear floor area with a minimum dimension of 13 feet (3962 mm). There shall be space for crib and sleeping space for support person. An area within the room but distinct from the mother's area shall be provided for infant stabilization and resuscitation. The medical gas outlets shall be located in the room so that they are accessible to the mother's delivery area and infant resuscitation area.

1224.32.4.3 Occupancy. Each LDR or LDRP room shall be for single occupancy.

1224.32.4.4 Shower or tub. Each LDR or LDRP room shall have direct access to a private toilet room with shower or tub.

1224.32.4.5 Handwashing fixtures. Each LDR or LDRP room shall be equipped with handwashing fixtures.

1224.32.5 Newborn/well baby nurseries

1224.32.5.1 General. Infants shall be housed in nurseries that comply with the standards below. All nurseries shall be immediately accessible to the postpartum unit and obstetrical facilities. The nurseries shall be located and arranged to preclude the need for unrelated pedestrian traffic. No nursery shall open directly onto another nursery. Each nursery shall contain the following:

1224.32.5.1.1 Handwashing fixtures. At least one handwashing fixture for each six infant bassinets.

1224.32.5.1.2 Storage. Storage for linens and infant supplies at each nursery room.

1224.32.5.1.3 Lactation. A consultation/demonstration/breast feeding or pump room shall be provided in a location that is readily accessible to the nursery. Provisions shall be made, either within the room or immediately accessible to the room, for a

sink, counter, refrigeration and freezing, storage for pump and attachments, and educational materials. This area may be shared between units.

1224.32.5.1.4 Workroom(s). Each nursery shall be served by a connecting workroom. The workroom shall contain gowning facilities at the entrance for staff and housekeeping personnel, work counter, refrigerator, storage for supplies, and a handwashing fixture. One workroom may serve more than one nursery room provided that required services are convenient to each. Adequate provision shall be made for storage of emergency cart(s) and equipment out of traffic and for the sanitary storage and disposal of soiled waste.

1224.32.5.1.5 Housekeeping room. A housekeeping room shall be provided for the exclusive use of the nursery unit. It shall be directly accessible from the unit.

1224.32.5.1.6 Charting space. Charting facilities shall have linear surface space to ensure that staff and physicians may chart and have simultaneous access to information and communication systems.

1224.32.5.2 Space requirements. Each newborn nursery room shall contain no more than 16 infant stations. Nurseries shall provide a minimum of 25 square feet (2.32 m²) of floor area per bassinet, with at least 3 feet (914 mm) between bassinets and at least 6 inches (152 mm) from a wall.

1224.33 EMERGENCY SERVICE.

1224.33.1 Definition. Levels of emergency care range from initial emergency management as Standby Emergency Medical Service, with a Physician on call; to definitive emergency care as Basic Emergency Medical Service, with a Physician on duty; to a Comprehensive Emergency Medical Service as an Emergency Department.

1224.33.2 Standby Emergency Medical Service. If provided, initial emergency management shall be provided in a specifically designated area of the hospital which shall include the following elements:

1224.33.2.1 Exterior entrance. A well-marked, illuminated and covered entrance, at grade level. The emergency vehicle entry cover shall provide shelter for both the patient and the emergency medical crew during transfer from an emergency vehicle into the building. This exterior entrance shall not be substituted for the required accessible entrance to the hospital, protected from the weather by canopy or roof overhang assigned for passengers loading zone. Ambulance entrances shall provide a minimum of 6 feet (183 mm) in clear width to accommodate bariatric stretchers, mobile patient lift devices, and accompanying attendants. Reception shall be located to permit staff observation and control of access to treatment area, pedestrian and ambulance entrances, and public waiting area.

1224.33.2.2 Treatment room. Standby emergency service shall include at least one treatment room with the following elements:

1. The area shall not be less than 120 square feet (11.15 m²) of clear floor area, exclusive of toilet room(s), waiting area and storage.
2. Each treatment room shall contain an examination light, work counter, and handwashing station.
3. Medical equipment, cabinets, medication storage and counter space for writing.
4. The dimensions and arrangement of treatment rooms shall be such that there is a minimum of 3 feet (914 mm) between the sides and foot of the bed/gurney and any wall or any other fixed obstruction. The treatment room may have additional space and provisions for several patients with cubicle curtains for privacy.
5. Multiple-station treatment rooms shall provide a minimum of 80 square feet (7.43 m²) per patient gurney, with a minimum 8 foot width (2,438 mm) and 3 feet (914 mm) at the foot of the bed/gurney, with a minimum of 3 feet to any wall or fixed obstruction, and a minimum of 5 feet (1524 mm) between patient gurneys. Patient gurneys shall be separated from adjoining cubicles by curtains. Handwashing fixtures shall be provided for each four treatment stations or major fraction thereof in multiple-station areas.

Exception: Where renovation of existing treatment rooms is undertaken in facilities approved under the 2001 or prior California Building Code, existing treatment rooms may be renovated, or replaced in kind one for one in the renovated space. Such treatment rooms shall have no less than 80 square feet (7.43 m²) of clear floor area, the least dimension of which shall be 8 feet (2438 mm).

1224.33.2.3 Storage. Equipment and supply storage shall be provided and be sized for general medical/surgical emergency supplies, medications and equipment such as ventilator, defibrillator, splints, etc. This storage shall be located in an alcove or room, out of corridor or hallway traffic, and under staff control.

1224.33.2.4 Lobby. Provisions for reception, control, and public waiting, including a public toilet room(s) with handwashing fixture(s), and public telephone.

1224.33.2.5 Toilet room(s). Patient toilet room(s) with handwashing fixture(s) shall be immediately accessible to the treatment room(s).

1224.33.2.6 Communication. Communication connections to the Poison Control Center and local EMS system shall be provided.

1224.33.2.7 Observation area. A patient cubicle with a minimum clear floor area of 100 square feet (9.29 m²)

shall be provided under the visual control of an emergency service staff work area. The patient station shall have space at bedside for visitors and shall have provision for visual privacy from casual observation by other patients and visitors. A handwashing station shall be located in each room, and at least one handwashing station shall be provided for every four patient stations, or major fraction thereof, in open-bay areas.

Exception: For small and rural hospitals, the observation area need not be dedicated solely for that purpose.

1224.33.2.8 Airborne infection isolation exam/treatment room. If provided, the airborne infection isolation exam/treatment room shall comply with the requirements of Section 1224.4.4.1.3.

1224.33.3 Basic Emergency Medical Service. When 24-hour basic emergency service is to be provided, at a minimum, all the provisions of Standby Emergency Service under Section 1224.33.2 and the following shall be provided:

1224.33.3.1 Exterior entrance. In addition to the requirements of Section 1224.33.2.1 the emergency entrance shall have direct access from public roads for ambulance and vehicle traffic conforming with the requirements of the local authorities having jurisdiction. Entrance and driveway shall be clearly marked. If a raised platform is used for ambulance discharge, provide a ramp for pedestrian and wheelchair access.

1224.33.3.2 Patient access. Paved emergency access shall be provided to permit discharge of patients from automobiles and ambulances, and temporary parking convenient to the entrance.

1224.33.3.3 Reception, triage, and control station(s). This area shall be located to permit staff observation and control of access to treatment areas, pedestrian and ambulance entrances, and public waiting area.

1224.33.3.4 Wheelchair and gurney storage. Storage for wheelchairs and gurneys for arriving patients shall be located out of circulation paths with access to emergency entrances.

1224.33.3.5 Public waiting area. A public waiting area shall be provided in compliance with Section 1224.4.5 and include provision of public toilet room(s), drinking fountains, and telephone adjacent to the waiting area, dedicated to, and within, the Emergency Service Space.

1224.33.3.6. Examination and treatment room(s). Examination and treatment rooms shall meet the requirements under Section 1224.33.2.2.

1224.33.3.7 Trauma/cardiac rooms. These rooms are for emergency procedures, including emergency surgery, and shall have at least 250 square feet (23.23 m²) of clear floor space. A minimum clearance of 5 feet (152 mm) shall be provided around all sides of the procedure table or gurney. Each room shall have cabinets and emergency supply shelves, image viewing capability, examination lights, and counter space

for writing. Additional space with cubicle curtains for privacy may be provided to accommodate more than one patient at a time in the trauma room with a minimum clear floor area of 200 square feet (18.58 m²) for each patient bay defined by the privacy curtains. There shall be storage provided for immediate access to attire used for universal precautions. Doors leading from the ambulance entrance to the cardiac trauma room shall have an opening with a minimum width of 5 feet (1524 mm). At least one scrub sink shall be located outside the entrance to each trauma room. One scrub station consisting of two scrub positions is permitted to serve two trauma rooms if located adjacent to the entrance of each procedure room. The placement of scrub sinks shall not restrict the minimum required corridor width.

1224.33.3.8 Orthopedic and cast work. At least one orthopedic or cast room shall be provided within the emergency service space. Provisions shall include storage for splints and other orthopedic supplies, traction hooks, image viewing capability, and examination lights. If a sink is used for the disposal of plaster of paris, a plaster trap shall be provided. The clear floor space for this area shall be a minimum of 180 square feet (16.7 m²)

1224.33.3.9 Poison Control Center and EMS communications center. Communication connections shall be provided as required under Section 1224.33.2.6. The communications center may be a part of the staff work and charting area.

1224.33.3.10 Emergency equipment storage space. Equipment and supply storage shall be provided as required under Section 1224.33.2.3.

1224.33.3.11 Patients' toilet room. A patient toilet room with a lavatory shall be immediately accessible to the treatment room(s). Where there are more than eight treatment stations, a minimum of two toilet rooms, with a lavatory in each toilet room, shall be required.

1224.33.3.12 Storage. Provide rooms for clean, soiled or used supplies.

1224.33.3.12.1 Soiled workroom or soiled holding room. See Section 1224.4.4.7. This room is for the exclusive use of the emergency service space.

1224.33.3.12.2 Clean utility room. See Section 1224.4.4.6.

1224.33.3.13 Administrative center or nurses' station for staff work and charting. These areas shall have space for counters, cabinets, and medication storage, and shall be provided with handwashing stations. They may be combined with or include centers for reception and communication.

1224.33.3.14 Staff lounge. A staff lounge shall be located within the Emergency Department and include staff clothing change areas with lockers, showers, toilets and handwashing stations for male and female staff.

1224.33.3.15 Housekeeping room. A housekeeping room, compliant with Section 1224.4.15, shall be located within the unit and dedicated to the emergency service space.

1224.33.3.16 Airborne infection isolation exam/treatment room. If provided shall comply with the requirements of Section 1224.4.4.1.3.

1224.33.3.17 Secured holding room. When a secure holding room is provided, it shall meet the following requirements. The location of the secure holding room(s) shall facilitate staff observation and monitoring of patients in these areas. The secure holding room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 60 square feet (5.57 square meters) with a minimum wall length of 7 feet (2.13 meters) and a maximum wall length of 11 feet (3.35 meters). This room shall be designed to prevent injury to patients:

1. All finishes, light fixtures, vents, diffusers, and fire protection/alarm components shall be tamper resistant and ligature resistant.
2. There shall not be any electrical outlets, medical gas outlets, or similar devices.
3. There shall be no sharp corners, edges, or protrusions, and the walls shall be free of objects or accessories of any kind.
4. Patient room doors shall swing out and shall have hardware on the exterior side of the door only. The minimum width shall be 44 inches (1120 mm).
5. A small impact-resistant view panel or window shall be provided in the door for discreet staff observation of the patient.

1224.33.4 Comprehensive Emergency Medical Service. When 24-hour comprehensive emergency service is to be provided, an Emergency Department shall be provided. At a minimum, all the provisions of Stand-by Emergency Service under Section 1224.33.2, the provisions of Basic Emergency Service under Section 1224.33.3, and all of the following shall be provided:

1224.33.4.1 Triage stations. In addition to the requirements of Section 1224.33.3.3, the triage area shall include triage station(s) with the following minimum requirements:

1. 100 square feet (9.29 m²) minimum clear floor area for each private triage room and 80 square feet (7.4 m²) minimum clear floor area for each station in open-bay triage areas.
2. Provisions for patient privacy.
3. Handwashing station in each triage room. In open-bay triage areas, one handwashing station shall be provided for every four triage stations.
4. Immediate access to emergency call and code call stations.
5. Medical gas outlets for triage areas in compliance with Table 1224.4.6.1.

1224.33.4.2 Fast-track area. A fast-track area may be used for treating patients presenting simple and less serious conditions. If a fast-track area is provided, it shall meet the following requirements:

1. Space requirements – each fast-track station shall have a minimum 100 square feet (9.29 m²) of clear floor area.
2. Each station shall include a handwashing station, work/documentation counter, examination table light.
3. Storage areas for supplies and medication.
4. A separate procedure room may be provided. It shall have a minimum clear floor area of 120 square feet (11.15 m²).

1224.33.4.3 Pre-screening stations. A pre-screening area may be used prior to admission to the Emergency Department. If pre-screening is provided, each station must have a minimum of 80 square feet (7.4 m²) of clear floor area, a handwashing station, documentation counter, and a storage cabinet. Pre-screening stations, whether private rooms or open bays, are considered a part of the waiting area and must meet the same ventilation requirements.

1224.33.4.4 Diagnostic service areas. Radiological/Imaging services shall be readily accessible. The Emergency Department shall be supported by Clinical Laboratory services. A STAT lab may be provided within the emergency medical service space in addition to more comprehensive support provided by the Clinical Lab.

1224.33.4.5 On-call room(s). Provisions shall be made to accommodate on-call sleeping room(s) for physicians and/or medical staff within the Emergency Department.

1224.33.4.6 Police and press room. Provisions shall be made to accommodate police briefing/debriefing and press releases. This may be located outside the Emergency Department.

1224.33.5 Other space considerations.

1224.33.5.1 Observation units. Observation rooms for the monitoring of patients up to 24 hours may be provided as a distinct unit within, the emergency department. If provided the unit shall have the following:

1. Handwashing stations shall be provided in each patient room or for each four treatment stations or major fraction thereof. Handwashing stations shall be directly accessible to nurse stations and patient care areas.
2. Each patient station shall have a minimum of 120 square feet (11.15 m²) of clear floor area including space at each bedside for visitors and provision for visual privacy from casual observation by other patients and visitors.
3. One toilet room shall be provided for each six treatment stations or major fraction thereof.

at least 120 square feet (11.15 m²) of clear floor space shall be provided for patients. This room shall contain a counter and handwashing fixture.

1224.36.2.7 Medication dispensing. If provided, there shall be a medication dispensing station for the dialysis center. A work counter and handwashing fixtures shall be included in this area. Provisions shall be made for the controlled storage, preparation, distribution and refrigeration of medications.

1224.36.2.8 Home training. If provided in the unit, a private treatment area of at least 120 square feet (11.15 m²) shall be provided for patients who are being trained to use dialysis equipment at home. This room shall contain counter, handwashing fixtures, and a separate drain for fluid disposal.

1224.36.2.9 Examination room. An examination room with a handwashing fixture shall be provided with at least 100 square feet (9.29 m²).

1224.36.2.10 Clean utility room. A clean utility room shall be provided. If the room is used for preparing patient care items, it shall contain a work counter, a handwashing fixture, and storage facilities for clean and sterile supplies. If the room is used only for storage and holding as part of a system for distribution of clean and sterile materials, the work counter and handwashing fixture may be omitted. Soiled and clean utility rooms or holding rooms shall be separated and have no direct connection.

1224.36.2.11 Soiled utility room. A soiled workroom shall be provided and contain a sink, handwashing fixture, work counter, storage cabinets, waste receptacles and a soiled linen receptacle.

1224.36.2.12 Reprocessing room. If dialyzers are reused, a reprocessing room is required and sized to perform the functions required and include one-way flow of materials from soiled to clean with provisions for a refrigerator (temporary storage or dialyzer), decontamination/cleaning areas, sinks, processors, computer processors and label printers, packaging area and dialyzer storage and disinfectants cabinets.

1224.36.2.13 Nourishment station. If a nourishment station for the dialysis service is provided, the nourishment station shall contain a sink, a work counter, a refrigerator, storage cabinets and equipment for serving nourishments as required.

1224.36.2.14 Housekeeping room. Provide a housekeeping room that is immediately accessible to, and for the exclusive use of the unit

1224.36.2.15 Repair room. If required, an equipment repair and breakdown room shall be equipped with a handwashing fixture, deep service sink, work counter and storage cabinet. Needs water supply and drain connection for testing machines.

1224.36.2.16 Supplies. Supply areas or supply carts shall be provided.

1224.36.2.17 Storage. Storage space shall be available for wheelchairs and gurneys, if gurneys are provided, out of direct line of traffic.

1224.36.2.18 Clean linen storage. A clean linen storage area shall be provided. This may be within the clean utility room, a separate closet, or an approved distribution system. If a closed cart system is used, storage may be in an alcove. It must be out of the path of normal traffic and under staff control.

1224.36.2.19 Mixing room. Each facility using a central batch delivery system shall provide, either on the premises or through written arrangements, individual delivery systems for the treatment of any patient requiring special dialysis solutions. The mixing room shall also include a sink, storage space and holding tanks.

1224.36.2.20 Water treatment room. The water treatment equipment shall be located in an enclosed room.

1224.36.2.21 Patient toilet. A patient toilet room with a lavatory shall be provided.

1224.36.3 Ancillary facilities.

1224.36.3.1 Staff lounge, lockers and toilet(s). Space shall be available for male and female personnel for staff clothing change area and lounge. The areas shall contain lockers, shower, toilet(s), and handwashing fixtures.

1224.36.3.2 Patient storage. Storage for patients' belongings shall be provided.

1224.36.3.3 Waiting room. A waiting room, toilet room(s) with handwashing fixtures, drinking fountain, public telephone, and seating accommodations for waiting periods shall be available or accessible to the dialysis unit.

1224.36.3.4 Administrative services. Provide office and clinical work space.

1224.37 RESPIRATORY THERAPY SERVICE SPACE. If respiratory service is provided, the following elements shall be included:

1. **Storage for equipment and supplies.**
2. **Space and utilities for cleaning and disinfecting equipment.** Provide physical separation of the space for receiving and cleaning soiled materials from the space for storage of clean equipment and supplies. Appropriate local exhaust ventilation shall be provided if glutaraldehyde or other noxious disinfectants are used in the cleaning process. This space may be co-located with other reprocessing functions within the hospital.
3. **Additional facilities.** If respiratory services such as testing and demonstration for outpatients are part of the program, additional facilities and equipment shall be provided including but not limited to:
 - 3.1. Patient waiting.
 - 3.2. A reception and control station.

1224.38 INTERMEDIATE-CARE SERVICE SPACE. An intermediate-care service unit shall be housed in a separate and distinct nursing unit and shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 1225.

1224.39 OUTPATIENT SERVICE SPACE.

1224.39.1 Waiting area(s). Provide with access to public toilet room facilities, a public telephone and a drinking fountain. These facilities may be shared with other services.

1224.39.2 Outpatient surgery. If outpatient surgery is performed in the out patient service area, the following shall be provided:

1. An operating room(s) with a minimum clear floor area of 270 square feet (25.08 m²), no dimension of which shall be less than 15 feet (4572 mm).
2. Preoperative patient holding shall be provided in accordance with Section 1224.16.2.
3. A postanesthesia recovery area which meets the requirements of Section 1224.16.
4. Each surgical unit shall provide a separate cleanup room separated from any surgical sterilizing facilities. The cleanup room shall provide 24 square feet (2.2 m²) per operating room up to eight operating rooms and shall have the minimum area of 48 square feet (4.5 m²), with no dimension less than 6 feet (1829 mm).
5. Scrub sinks which meet the requirements of Section 1224.15.3.5.
6. Service areas which meet the requirements of Section 1224.15.3.
7. A housekeeping room shall be provided for the exclusive use of outpatient surgery. It shall be directly accessible from the service area.

1224.39.3 Gastrointestinal endoscopy. If gastrointestinal endoscopy is performed in the outpatient service area, the endoscopy suite shall be divided into a minimum of three major functional areas: the procedure room(s), instrument processing room(s), and patient holding/preparation and recovery room or area and the following shall be provided:

1224.39.3.1 Procedure room(s).

1224.39.3.1.1 Space requirements. Procedure room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 200 square feet (18.6 m²). Room arrangement shall permit a minimum clearance of 3 feet, 6 inches (1067 mm) at each side, head, and foot of the gurney/table.

1224.39.3.1.2 Handwashing stations. A separate dedicated handwashing station with hands-free controls shall be provided in the procedure room.

1224.39.3.2 Processing room.

1224.39.3.2.1 Dedicated processing room(s) for cleaning and decontaminating instruments shall be provided. The cleaning area shall allow for flow of instruments from the contaminated area to the clean assembly area and then to storage.

1224.39.3.2.2 The decontamination area shall be equipped with the following:

1. Utility sink(s) shall be provided as appropriate to the method of decontamination used.
2. One freestanding handwashing station.
3. Work counter space(s).

1224.39.3.3 Pre-operative patient holding. A pre-operative patient holding area shall be provided in accordance with Section 1224.16.2.

1224.39.3.4 Post-anesthesia recovery area. A post-anesthesia recovery area shall meet the requirements of Section 1224.16.3.

1224.39.3.5 Communication system. A system for emergency communication shall be provided.

1224.39.4 CANCER TREATMENT/INFUSION THERAPY SERVICE SPACE.

1224.39.4.1 General. If provided, cancer treatment/infusion therapy service shall comply with the following:

1224.39.4.2 Treatment area.

1224.39.4.2.1 Location. The treatment area may be an open area and shall be separated from administrative and waiting areas.

1224.39.4.2.2 Nurses' station(s). Shall be located within the cancer treatment/infusion therapy area and designed to provide visual observation of all patient stations.

1224.39.4.2.3 Individual patient treatment areas. Shall contain at least 80 square feet (7.4 m²).

There shall be at least a 4-foot (1219 mm) space around and between beds and/or lounge chairs used for chemotherapy treatment/infusion.

1224.39.4.2.4 Handwashing stations. Handwashing stations shall be directly accessible to the nurses' station and patient treatment areas. There shall be at least one handwashing station to serve no more than four patient stations. These shall be uniformly distributed to provide equal access from each patient station.

1224.39.4.2.5 Privacy. The open unit shall be designed to provide privacy for each patient.

1224.39.4.2.6 Medication dispensing. If provided, there shall be a medication dispensing station for the cancer treatment/infusion therapy area. A work counter and handwashing fixture(s) shall be included in the area. Provisions shall be made for the controlled storage, preparation, distribution and refrigeration of medications.

1224.39.4.2.7 Examination room. An examination room with a handwashing fixture shall be provided with at least 100 square feet (9.29 m²).

1224.39.4.2.8 Clean utility room. A clean utility room shall be provided. If the room is used for preparing patient care items, it shall contain a work counter, a handwashing fixture, and storage facilities for clean and sterile supplies. If the room is used for storage and holding as part of a system for distribution of clean and sterile materials, the work counter and handwashing fixture may be omitted.

Soiled and clean utility rooms or holding rooms shall be separated and have no direct connection.

1224.39.4.2.9 Soiled utility room. A soiled workroom shall be provided and contain a sink, hand-washing fixture, work counter, storage cabinets, waste receptacles and a soiled linen receptacle.

1224.39.4.2.10 Nourishment station. If nourishment station for the cancer treatment/infusion therapy service is provided, the nourishment station shall contain a sink, a work counter, a refrigerator, storage cabinets and equipment for serving nourishment as required.

1224.39.4.2.11 Housekeeping room. Provide a housekeeping room that is immediately accessible to and for the exclusive use of the unit.

1224.39.4.2.12 Supplies. Supply areas or supply carts shall be provided.

1224.39.4.2.13 Storage. Storage space shall be available for wheelchairs and gurneys. If gurneys are provided, they shall be out of the direct line of traffic.

1224.39.4.2.14 Clean linen storage. A clean linen storage area shall be provided. This may be within the clean utility room, a separate closet, or an approved distribution system. If a closed cart system is used, storage may be in an alcove. It must be out of the path of normal traffic and under staff control.

1224.39.4.2.15 Patient toilet. A patient toilet room with a lavatory shall be provided.

1224.39.4.3 Ancillary facilities.

1224.39.4.3.1 Staff lounge, lockers and toilets. Space shall be available for male and female personnel for staff clothing change area and lounge. The areas shall contain lockers, toilets, and hand-washing stations.

1224.39.4.3.2 Patient storage. Storage for patients' belongings shall be provided.

1224.39.4.3.3 Administrative services. Office and clinical work space shall be provided.

1224.39.4.3.4 Special design elements. Decorative water features and fish tanks shall not be located inside cancer treatment/infusion therapy unit.

1224.39.5 HYPERBARIC THERAPY SERVICE SPACE.

1224.39.5.1 General. If provided, clinical hyperbaric oxygen therapy service space shall meet the requirements of the "Hyperbaric Facilities" chapter in NFPA 99: Health Care Facilities Code and shall comply with the following:

1224.39.5.2 Hyperbaric chambers.

1224.39.5.2.1 Class A chamber (multi-place facilities).

1. **Clearances.** There shall be a minimum clearance of 3 feet (914 mm) around the chamber. The area in front of the chamber entry designed for gurney or bed access shall have a minimum clearance of 8 feet (2438 mm) for

gurney or bed approach. The area in front of the chamber entry designed for ambulatory or wheelchair access only shall have a minimum clearance of 5 feet (1524 mm) for wheelchair approach.

2. **Entries.** Chamber entries shall be provided with access ramps that are flush with the chamber entry doorway. Chamber entries not designed for gurney/bed access shall be a minimum of 3 feet (914 mm).

1224.39.5.2.2 Class B chamber (mono-place facilities).

1. **Clearances.** There shall be a minimum clearance of 3 feet (914 mm) around the chamber. A minimum clearance of 44 inches (1118 mm) shall be provided between the control sides of two chambers. The area in front of the chamber entry shall be designed for gurney or bed access with a minimum clearance of 8 feet (2438 mm) for gurney or bed approach.
2. **Oxygen.** An oxygen service valve shall be provided for each chamber.

1224.39.5.3 Pre-procedure patient holding area(s). In facilities with a Class A hyperbaric chamber or with three or more Class B chambers, a pre-procedure/patient holding area shall be provided to accommodate patients on gurneys or beds and sitting space for ambulatory patients. The area shall permit visual observation of the patient by nursing staff and be located out of traffic flow. Each gurney station shall be a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet (7.43 m²) and shall have a minimum clearance of 3 feet (914 mm) on the sides of the gurneys and the foot of the gurney. There shall be provisions for privacy such as cubicle curtains.

1224.39.5.4 Medical gas station outlets. Refer to Table 1224.4.6.1 Station Outlets for Oxygen, Vacuum (Suction) and Medical Air.

1224.39.5.5 Support areas for the hyperbaric suite.

1224.39.5.5.1 Reception/control desk. An administrative center/nurse station shall be provided within the hyperbaric suite.

1224.39.5.5.2 Examination/treatment room(s). Room(s) for individual consultation and treatment shall be provided and meet the requirements of Section 1224.4.4.1.

1224.39.5.5.3 Clean linen storage. A clean linen storage area shall be provided. This may be within the clean utility room, a separate closet or an approved distribution system. If a closed cart system is used, storage may be in an alcove. It must be out of the path of normal traffic and under staff control.

1224.39.5.5.4 Clean supply room. A clean supply room shall be provided and meet the requirements of Section 1224.4.4.6.1. This room may be omitted if the suite is served by a cart system.

1224.39.5.5.5 Gas cylinder room. The gas cylinder room shall provide space to house eight (H) cylinders and two gas manifolds, consisting of at least two (H) cylinders on each manifold.

1224.39.5.5.6 Gurney and wheelchair storage. Space for gurney and wheelchair storage shall be provided.

1224.39.5.5.7 Housekeeping room. A housekeeping room shall be provided and shall be immediately accessible to the hyperbaric suite.

1224.39.5.5.8 Compressor room. A compressor room shall be provided to house the chamber compressors, accumulator tanks and fire suppression system.

1224.39.5.6 Support areas for staff. Toilet rooms with a handwashing stations shall be immediately accessible to the hyperbaric suite for staff use.

1224.39.5.7 Support areas for patients.

1224.39.5.7.1 Patient waiting area. The patient waiting area shall be provided and meet the requirements of Section 1224.39.1.

1224.39.5.7.2 Patient changing areas. Changing area(s) for outpatients shall be provided for patient clothing and for securing valuables.

1224.39.5.7.3 Patient toilet room. A patient toilet room with a handwashing station shall be directly accessible to the hyperbaric suite.

1224.40 SKILLED NURSING SERVICE SPACE. If provided a skilled nursing service unit shall be housed in a separate and distinct nursing unit and shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 1225.

1224.41 SOCIAL SERVICE SPACE. If provided, the social service space shall include office or other space for privacy in interviewing, telephoning and conducting conferences.

SECTION 1225 [OSHPD 2] SKILLED NURSING AND INTERMEDIATE-CARE FACILITIES

1225.1 Scope. The provisions of this section shall apply to skilled nursing and intermediate-care facilities, including distinct part skilled nursing and intermediate-care services on a general acute-care or acute psychiatric hospital license, provided either is in a separate unit or a freestanding building. Skilled nursing facilities and intermediate-care facilities shall provide all common elements and support services. The required services for skilled nursing and intermediate-care facility licensure: dietary, pharmacy services, and activity program shall be provided. At the option of the provider, the medical model or the household model may be used.

1225.1.1 Small house skilled nursing facilities. Skilled nursing facilities participating in the Small House Nursing Facilities Pilot Program established by and in conformance with Section 1323.5 of the California Health and Safety Code, shall meet all the provisions of Section 1225.4 Common Elements and Section 1225.5.2 Household Model applicable to small house skilled nursing facilities.

1225.2 Application. New buildings and additions, alterations or repairs to existing buildings subject to licensure shall comply with applicable provisions of the California Electrical Code, California Mechanical Code, California Plumbing Code, California Fire Code (Parts 3, 4, 5 and 9 of Title 24), and this section.

Exception: See Section 1224.2.

1225.2.1 Services/systems and utilities. Services/systems and utilities that are necessary to the operation of a skilled nursing facility or intermediate care facility shall meet the requirements of this section. Examples of services/systems and utilities include but are not limited to normal power; emergency power; nurse call; fire alarm; communication and data systems; space-heating systems; process load systems; cooling systems; domestic hot and cold water systems; means of egress systems; fire-suppression systems; building drain and sewer systems; and medical gas systems that support licensed services.

1225.2.1.1 New buildings, additions, alterations and remodels. Services/systems and utilities for new buildings, additions, alterations and remodels shall only originate in, pass through or under structures which are under the jurisdiction of the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD).

1225.2.2 Means of egress for single-story wood frame or light-steel frame skilled nursing facilities and intermediate care facilities. Means of egress for single-story wood frame or light-steel frame skilled nursing facilities and intermediate care facilities shall only pass through buildings that are under the jurisdiction of the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD).

1225.3 Definitions. Refer to Section 1224.3.

1225.4 COMMON ELEMENTS.

1225.4.1 NURSING SERVICE SPACE.

1225.4.1.1 Nurses' station. A nurses' station in free-standing skilled nursing and intermediate-care facilities shall be provided within each nursing unit. Nurses' stations shall be designed to serve no more than 60 beds.

1225.4.1.1.1 Components. Nurses' stations shall be provided with a cabinet, a desk, space for records, a bulletin board, a telephone, a specifically designated, lockable and illuminated medicine storage compartment, and a handwashing fixture. If a separate medicine room is provided, it shall have a lockable door and a sink. This sink cannot replace the required nurses' station handwashing fixture.

1225.4.1.1.2 Size. Nurses' stations serving 25 or less beds shall have a minimum floor area of 100 square feet (9.29 m²). Nurses' stations servicing more than 25 beds shall have a minimum floor area of 125 square feet (11.6 m²). The minimum dimension of any nurses' station shall not be less than 8 feet (2438 mm).

1225.4.1.1.3 Distance. In free-standing skilled nursing and intermediate-care facilities, the distance between the nurses station entrance and the center

1226.5.14.5 Support areas for the hyperbaric suite.

1226.5.14.5.1 Reception/control desk. Refer to Section 1224.39.5.5.1.

1226.5.14.5.2 Examination/treatment room(s). Refer to Section 1224.39.5.5.2.

1226.5.14.5.3 Clean linen storage. Refer to Section 1224.39.5.5.3.

1226.5.14.5.4 Clean supply room. Refer to Section 1224.39.5.5.4.

1226.5.14.5.5 Gas cylinder room. Refer to Section 1224.39.5.5.5.

1226.5.14.5.6 Gurney and wheelchair storage. Refer to Section 1224.39.5.5.6.

1226.5.14.5.7 Housekeeping room. Refer to Section 1224.39.5.5.7.

1226.5.14.5.8 Compressor room. Refer to Section 1224.39.5.5.8.

1226.5.14.6 Support areas for staff. Refer to Section 1224.39.5.6.

1226.5.14.7 Support areas for patients.

1226.5.14.7.1 Patient waiting area. Refer to Section 1224.39.5.7.1.

1226.5.14.7.2 Patient changing area. Refer to Section 1224.39.5.7.2.

1226.5.14.7.3 Patient toilet room. Refer to Section 1224.39.5.7.3.

PRIMARY CARE CLINICS

1226.6 PRIMARY CARE CLINICS. Primary care clinics and outpatient clinical services of a hospital providing services equivalent to a primary care clinic shall comply with Sections 1226.4.3 through 1226.4.8 and the provisions of this section.

1226.6.1 Examination and treatment areas.

1226.6.1.1 Examination room(s). Refer to Section 1224.4.4.1.

1226.6.1.2 Treatment room(s). Treatment room(s) for minor procedures (e.g. minor surgical procedures, casting), if provided, shall have a minimum area of 120 square feet (11.15 m²), the least dimension of which shall be a minimum of 10 feet (3048 mm), excluding such spaces as vestibules and work counters, and shall meet the requirements in Section 1224.4.4.1.

1226.6.1.3 Dental examination and treatment areas. When provided, the examination and treatment space shall be permitted to be a room or a patient care station in an open treatment area.

1226.6.1.3.1 Area. The treatment space shall have a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet (7.4 m²). This space is required for each station in an open operatory or treatment area. A minimum of 3 feet (915 mm) clearance shall be provided along the full length of one side of the chair, the head of the chair,

and between the cuspidor and the head of the chair on the other side for assisting dental staff.

1226.6.1.3.2 Pediatric patients. At least one private consultation/treatment room shall be provided when pediatric patients are treated in a facility.

1226.6.1.3.3 Handwashing. Each treatment room shall include a handwashing station. If treatment is provided at stations in an open operatory, a handwashing station may be permitted to serve two treatment stations.

1226.6.1.3.4 Imaging. If provided, space for a dental panoramic x-ray system and printer shall also comply with shielding requirements in Section 1226.5.5.2 and alcove requirements in Section 1224.18.1.1.

1226.6.1.4 Oral surgery. When provided, treatment areas for procedures for which general anesthesia is used, shall comply with the requirements in Section 1226.8.

1226.6.2 Support areas for examination rooms.

1226.6.2.1 Administrative center or nurse station. Refer to Section 1226.4.13.1.

1226.6.2.2 Medication station. Refer to Section 1226.4.13.2.

1226.6.2.3 Clean utility room. Refer to Section 1226.4.13.3.

1226.6.2.4 Soiled workroom or soiled linen holding. Refer to Section 1226.4.13.4.

1226.6.2.5 Consultation room. Dental facilities must provide a consultation room for private conferences with patients.

1226.6.2.6 Sterilization facilities. If sterile processing and/or high level disinfection is provided, the sterile processing room shall consist of a decontamination area and a clean work area. The sterile processing/high level disinfection room shall be designed to provide one-way flow of contaminated materials/instruments to the sterilizer/high level disinfection equipment. Sterile/high level disinfected instruments should be distributed from the area in such a manner that processed items do not pass through the decontamination area.

1226.6.2.6.1 Decontamination area. The decontamination area shall be equipped with the following:

1. Countertop, separated from clean countertop by 4 feet minimum distance.
2. Handwashing station separate from the instrument washing sink.
3. Sink for washing instruments. To avoid splash, the decontamination sink shall be separated from the clean work area by either a 4-foot distance from the edge of the sink or a separating wall or screen. If a screen is used, it shall extend a minimum of 4 feet (1220 mm) above the sink rim.
4. Storage for supplies.

1226.6.2.6.2 Clean work area. The clean work area shall be equipped with the following:

1. Countertop, separated from decontamination countertop by 4 feet minimum distance.
2. Sterilizer/high level disinfection equipment, as required for the services provided.
3. Handwashing station, may share with decontamination area handwashing station.
4. Built-in storage for supplies.

1226.6.2.7 Laboratory. Facilities for laboratory services shall be provided in dental facilities or through a contract arrangement with a laboratory service.

1226.6.3 Support areas for patients.

1226.6.3.1 Patient toilet room(s). Refer to Section 1226.4.14.1.

1226.6.3.2 Specimen collection and/or blood collection facilities. When provided, refer to Section 1224.4.4.2.

1226.6.4 General support services and facilities.

1226.6.4.1 Garbage, solid waste, medical waste and trash storage. Refer to Section 1226.4.9.

1226.6.4.2 Housekeeping room. Refer to Section 1224.4.15.

1226.6.5 Public and administrative areas.

1226.6.5.1 Public area.

1226.6.5.1.1 Reception. Refer to Section 1226.4.16.1.1.

1226.6.5.1.2 Outpatient waiting room. Refer to Section 1224.4.5.

1226.6.5.1.3 Public toilet(s). Refer to Section 1224.4.5.

1226.6.5.1.4 Public telephone access. Refer to Section 1224.4.5.

1226.6.5.1.5 Drinking fountain(s). Refer to Section 1224.4.5.

1226.6.5.2 Administrative services

1226.6.5.2.1 Medical records storage. Refer to Section 1226.4.16.2.1.

1226.6.5.2.2 Equipment and supply storage. Refer to Section 1226.4.16.2.2.

1226.6.6 Support areas for staff.

1226.6.6.1 Staff toilet(s). Refer to Section 1226.4.17.1.

1226.6.6.2 Storage for employees. Refer to Section 1226.4.17.2.

SURGICAL CLINICS

1226.8 SURGICAL CLINICS. Outpatient surgical clinics, and outpatient clinical services of a hospital providing services equivalent to a surgical clinic, shall comply with Sections 1226.4.2 through 1226.4.8 and the provisions of this section.

1226.8.1 Outpatient surgical service space.

1226.8.1.1 Operating room(s). Refer to Section 1224.39.2, Item 1.

1226.8.1.2 Perioperative services. Provide preoperative patient holding and post-anesthesia recovery area. Refer to Section 1224.16.

1226.8.2 Support areas for outpatient surgery.

1226.8.2.1 Control station. Refer to Section 1224.15.3.1.

1226.8.2.2 Supervisor's office or station. Refer to Section 1224.15.3.2.

1226.8.2.3 Substerile areas. When provided, refer to Section 1224.15.3.3.

1226.8.2.4 Medication station. Refer to Section 1226.4.13.2.

1226.8.2.5 Scrub facilities. Refer to Section 1224.15.3.5.

1226.8.2.6 Clock. Refer to Section 1224.15.3.6.

1226.8.2.7 Soiled workroom. Refer to Section 1224.15.3.7.

1226.8.2.8 Clean utility room. Refer to Section 1224.15.3.8.

1226.8.2.9 Anesthesia workroom. Refer to Section 1224.15.3.9.

1226.8.2.10 Equipment storage room(s) for equipment and supplies used in outpatient surgery. Refer to Section 1224.15.3.10.

1226.8.2.11 Staff clothing change areas. Refer to Section 1224.15.3.11.

1226.8.2.12 Housekeeping room. Refer to Section 1224.39.2, Item 7.

1226.8.2.13 Cleanup room. Refer to Section 1224.39.2, Item 4.

1226.8.2.14 Sterile and pharmaceutical supply storage. Refer to Section 1226.4.13.5.

1226.8.2.15 Sterilization facilities. Refer to Section 1226.4.13.6.

1226.8.3 Support areas for patients.

1226.8.3.1 Patient toilet room(s). Refer to Section 1226.4.14.1.

1226.8.3.2 Outpatient change area. A separate space shall be provided where patients change out of their street clothing and are prepared for the procedure. This space shall include provisions for clothing storage, toilet room(s), sink, space for clothing change and gowning area.

1226.8.4 General support services and facilities.

1226.8.4.1 Garbage, solid waste, medical waste and trash storage. Refer to Section 1226.4.9.

1226.8.4.2 Areas for off-site laundry services. Refer to Section 1226.4.15.1.

CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

CHAPTER 14 – EXTERIOR WALLS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are non-regulatory, intended only as an aid to the user.
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC- CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHDP				BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter	X										X										
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)				X	X			X	X	X			X								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below		X	X																		
Chapter / Section																					
1401			X																		
1402			X																		
1403.2.1		X																			
1403.4			X																		
1403.5			X																		
1404			X																		
1405			X																		
1405.1.1								X	X	X			X								
1405.3.1				X	X																
1405.3.2				X	X																
Table 1405.3.2				†	†																
1406			X																		
1407			X																		
1408			X																		
1411								X	X	X			X								

The state agency does not adopt sections identified by the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

CHAPTER 14

EXTERIOR WALLS

User note: Code change proposals to sections preceded by the designation [BS] will be considered by the IBC – Structural Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page ix.

SECTION 1401 GENERAL

1401.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall establish the minimum requirements for exterior walls; exterior wall coverings; exterior wall openings; exterior windows and doors; architectural trim; balconies and similar projections; and bay and oriel windows.

SECTION 1402 DEFINITIONS

1402.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

ADHERED MASONRY VENEER.

**ANCHORED MASONRY VENEER.
BACKING.**

EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEMS (EIFS).

EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEMS (EIFS) WITH DRAINAGE.

EXTERIOR WALL.

EXTERIOR WALL COVERING.

EXTERIOR WALL ENVELOPE.

FIBER-CEMENT SIDING.

**HIGH-PRESSURE DECORATIVE EXTERIOR-GRADE
COMPACT LAMINATE (HPL).**

**HIGH-PRESSURE DECORATIVE EXTERIOR-GRADE
COMPACT LAMINATE (HPL) SYSTEM.**

METAL COMPOSITE MATERIAL (MCM).

METAL COMPOSITE MATERIAL (MCM) SYSTEM.

POLYPROPYLENE SIDING.

PORCELAIN TILE.

veneer.

VINYL SIDING.

WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER.

**SECTION 1403
PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

1403.1 General. The provisions of this section shall apply to exterior walls, wall coverings and components thereof.

1403.2 Weather protection. Exterior walls shall provide the building with a weather-resistant exterior wall envelope. The exterior wall envelope shall include flashing, as described in Section 1405.4. The exterior wall envelope shall be designed and constructed in such a manner as to prevent the accumulation of water within the wall assembly by providing a water-resistive barrier behind the exterior veneer, as described in Section 1404.2, and a means for draining water that enters the assembly to the exterior. Protection against condensation in the exterior wall assembly shall be provided in accordance with Section 1405.3.

Exceptions:

1. A weather-resistant exterior wall envelope shall not be required over concrete or masonry walls designed in accordance with Chapters 19 and 21, respectively.
2. Compliance with the requirements for a means of drainage, and the requirements of Sections 1404.2 and 1405.4, shall not be required for an exterior wall envelope that has been demonstrated through testing to resist wind-driven rain, including joints, penetrations and intersections with dissimilar materials, in accordance with ASTM E331 under the following conditions:
 - 2.1. Exterior wall envelope test assemblies shall include at least one opening, one control joint, one wall/eave interface and one wall sill. All tested openings and penetrations shall be representative of the intended end-use configuration.
 - 2.2. Exterior wall envelope test assemblies shall be at least 4 feet by 8 feet (1219 mm by 2438 mm) in size.
 - 2.3. Exterior wall envelope assemblies shall be tested at a minimum differential pressure of 6.24 pounds per square foot (psf) (0.297 kN/m²).
 - 2.4. Exterior wall envelope assemblies shall be subjected to a minimum test exposure duration of 2 hours.

The exterior wall envelope design shall be considered to resist wind-driven rain where the results of testing indicate that water did not penetrate control joints in the exterior wall envelope, joints at the perimeter of openings or intersections of terminations with dissimilar materials.

3. Exterior insulation and finish systems (EIFS) complying with Section 1408.4.1.

1403.2.1 [BSC-CG] See *California Green Building Standards Code, Chapter 5, Division 5.4* for additional weather protection requirements.

[BS] 1403.3 Structural Exterior walls, and the associated openings, shall be designed and constructed to resist safely the superimposed loads required by Chapter 16.

1403.4 Fire resistance. Exterior walls shall be fire-resistance rated as required by other sections of this code with opening protection as required by Chapter 7.

1403.5 Vertical and lateral flame propagation. Exterior walls on buildings of Type I, II, III or IV construction that are greater than 40 feet (12 192 mm) in height above grade plane and contain a combustible water-resistive barrier shall be tested in accordance with and comply with the acceptance criteria of NFPA 285. For the purposes of this section, fenestration products and flashing of fenestration products shall not be considered part of the water-resistive barrier.

Exceptions:

1. Walls in which the water-resistive barrier is the only combustible component and the exterior wall has a wall covering of brick, concrete, stone, terra cotta, stucco or steel with minimum thicknesses in accordance with Table 1405.2.
2. Walls in which the water-resistive barrier is the only combustible component and the water-resistive barrier has a peak heat release rate of less than 150 kW/m², a total heat release of less than 20 MJ/m² and an effective heat of combustion of less than 18 MJ/kg as determined in accordance with ASTM E1354 and has a flame spread index of 25 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less as determined in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723. The ASTM E1354 test shall be conducted on specimens at the thickness intended for use, in the horizontal orientation and at an incident radiant heat flux of 50 kW/m².

[BS] 1403.6 Flood resistance. For buildings in flood hazard areas as established in Section 1612.3, exterior walls extending below the elevation required by Section 1612 shall be constructed with flood-damage-resistant materials.

[BS] 1403.7 Flood resistance for coastal high-hazard areas and coastal A zones. For buildings in coastal high-hazard areas and coastal A zones as established in Section 1612.3, electrical, mechanical and plumbing system components shall not be mounted on or penetrate through exterior walls that are designed to break away under flood loads.

CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE CHAPTER 15 – ROOF ASSEMBLIES AND ROOFTOP STRUCTURES

(Matrix Adoption Tables are non-regulatory, intended only as an aid to the user.

See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD				BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter											X										
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)	X			X	X			X	X	X			X								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below			X																		
Chapter / Section																					
1501			X																		
1502			X																		
1503.4				X	X																
1503.4.1				X	X																
1505			X																		
1506			X																		
1507			X																		
1507.3.10								X	X	X			X								
1507.7.8								X	X	X			X								
1509			X																		
1510.7.1, <i>Exception</i>	X			X	X			X	X												
1512			X																		
1513								X	X	X			X								

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 111.

CHAPTER 15 ROOF ASSEMBLIES AND ROOFTOP STRUCTURES

User note: Code change proposals to sections preceded by the designation [BF], [BG] or [P] will be considered by one of the code development committees meeting during the 2015 (Group A) Code Development Cycle. All other code change proposals will be considered by the IBC – Structural Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page ix.

SECTION 1501 GENERAL

1501.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall govern the design, materials, construction and quality of roof assemblies, and rooftop structures.

SECTION 1502 DEFINITIONS

1502.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

AGGREGATE.

BALLAST.

BUILDING-INTEGRATED PHOTOVOLTAIC (BIPV) PRODUCT.

BUILT-UP ROOF COVERING.

INTERLAYMENT.

MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT SCREEN.

METAL ROOF PANEL.

METAL ROOF SHINGLE.

MODIFIED BITUMEN ROOF COVERING.

PENTHOUSE.

PHOTOVOLTAIC MODULE.

PHOTOVOLTAIC PANEL.

PHOTOVOLTAIC PANEL SYSTEM.

PHOTOVOLTAIC SHINGLES.

POSITIVE ROOF DRAINAGE.

RADIANT BARRIER.

REROOFING.

ROOF ASSEMBLY.
ROOF COVERING.
ROOF COVERING SYSTEM.
ROOF DECK.
ROOF RECOVER.
ROOF REPAIR.
ROOF REPLACEMENT.
ROOF VENTILATION.
ROOFTOP STRUCTURE.
SCUPPER.
SINGLE-PLY MEMBRANE.
UNDERLAYMENT.
VEGETATIVE ROOF.

SECTION 1503 **WEATHER PROTECTION**

1503.1 General. Roof decks shall be covered with approved roof coverings secured to the building or structure in accordance with the provisions of this chapter. Roof coverings shall be designed and installed in accordance with this code and the approved manufacturer's instructions such that the roof covering shall serve to protect the building or structure.

1503.2 Flashing. Flashing shall be installed in such a manner so as to prevent moisture entering the wall and roof through joints in copings, through moisture-permeable materials and at intersections with parapet walls and other penetrations through the roof plane.

1503.2.1 Locations. Flashing shall be installed at wall and roof intersections, at gutters, wherever there is a change in roof slope or direction and around roof openings. Where flashing is of metal, the metal shall be corrosion resistant with a thickness of not less than 0.019 inch (0.483 mm) (No. 26 galvanized sheet).

1503.3 Coping. Parapet walls shall be properly coped with noncombustible, weatherproof materials of a width no less than the thickness of the parapet wall.

[P] 1503.4 Roof drainage. Design and installation of roof drainage systems shall comply with Section 1503 of this code and *Chapter 11 of the California Plumbing Code*.

[P] 1503.4.1 Secondary (emergency overflow) drains or scuppers. Where roof drains are required, secondary (emergency overflow) roof drains or scuppers shall be provided where the roof perimeter construction extends above the roof in such a manner that water will be entrapped if the primary drains allow buildup for any reason. The installation and sizing of secondary emergency overflow drains, leaders and conductors shall comply with *Chapter 11 of the California Plumbing Code*.

1503.4.2 Scuppers. When scuppers are used for secondary (emergency overflow) roof drainage, the quantity,

size, location and inlet elevation of the scuppers shall be sized to prevent the depth of ponding water from exceeding that for which the roof was designed as determined by Section 1611.1. Scuppers shall not have an opening dimension of less than 4 inches (102 mm). The flow through the primary system shall not be considered when locating and sizing scuppers.

1503.4.3 Gutters. Gutters and leaders placed on the outside of buildings, other than Group R-3, private garages and buildings of Type V construction, shall be of noncombustible material or a minimum of Schedule 40 plastic pipe.

1503.5 Attic and rafter ventilation. Intake and exhaust vents shall be provided in accordance with Section 1203.2 and the vent product manufacturer's installation instructions.

1503.6 Crickets and saddles. A cricket or saddle shall be installed on the ridge side of any chimney or penetration greater than 30 inches (762 mm) wide as measured perpendicular to the slope. Cricket or saddle coverings shall be sheet metal or of the same material as the roof covering.

Exception: Unit skylights installed in accordance with Section 2405.5 and flashed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions shall be permitted to be installed without a cricket or saddle.

SECTION 1504 **PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

1504.1.1 Wind resistance of asphalt shingles. Asphalt shingles shall be tested in accordance with ASTM D7158. Asphalt shingles shall meet the classification requirements of Table 1504.1.1 for the appropriate maximum basic wind speed. Asphalt shingle packaging shall bear a label to indicate compliance with ASTM D7158 and the required classification in Table 1504.1.1.

Exception: Asphalt shingles that are not included in the scope of ASTM D7158 shall be tested and labeled to indicate compliance with ASTM D3161 and the required classification in Table 1504.1.1.

1504.2 Wind resistance of clay and concrete tile. Wind loads on clay and concrete tile roof coverings shall be in accordance with Section 1609.5.

1504.2.1 Testing. Testing of concrete and clay roof tiles shall be in accordance with Sections 1504.2.1.1 and 1504.2.1.2.

1504.2.1.1 Overturning resistance. Concrete and clay roof tiles shall be tested to determine their resistance to overturning due to wind in accordance with SBCCI SSTD 11 and Chapter 15.

1504.2.1.2 Wind tunnel testing. Where concrete and clay roof tiles do not satisfy the limitations in Chapter 16 for rigid tile, a wind tunnel test shall be used to determine the wind characteristics of the concrete or

INDEX

A

ACCESS OPENINGS

Attic 1209.2
Crawl space 1209.1
Doors 712.3.2
Fire damper 716.4
Fire department 402.7.5
Mechanical appliances 1209.3
Refuse/laundry chutes 708.13.3

ACCESSIBILITY 1009, Chapter 11A, 11B

|| Accessible means of egress 1009, 11B-207
|| Accessible routes Chapter 11A, 11B-206,
Chapter 11B Division 4, 11B-402
> Amusement rides 11B-234, 11B-1002
> Application 1.9.1, Chapter 11B Division 1
> Assembly areas 11B-221, 11B-802
Assistive listening systems 11B-219, 11B-706
Automatic teller machines, fare machines
and point-of-sale machines . . . 11B-220, 11B-707
Bathroom 202, 1127A, 1134A
Benches 11B-903
|| Bus stops 11B-209
|| Changes in level . . . 1111A, 1121A, 1131A, 11B-303
> Clear floor or ground space . . Chapter 11A, 11B-305
> Controls Chapter 11A
Covered multifamily dwellings . . . 202, Chapter 11A
Curb ramps, blended transitions
and islands 202, 1112A, 11B-406
|| Destination-oriented elevators 11B-206.6,
11B-411
|| Detectable warnings 202, 1112A.9, 1116A.5
11B-247, 11B-705
Detention facilities and
correctional facilities 11B-232, 11B-807
|| Dimensions for adults and children 11B-102
|| Dining surfaces
and work surfaces 11B-226, 11B-902
Doors, doorways and gates 1126A, 1132A,
11B-404
Dressing, fitting and locker rooms 11B-222,
11B-803
Drinking fountains 1139A, 11B-211, 11B-602
Dwelling units Chapter 11A
Egress (see ACCESSIBLE MEANS
OF EGRESS) 1009
|| Electric vehicle charging
stations 11B-228, 11B-812

Elevators 1009.2.1, 1009.4, 1009.7.3,
1124A, 11B-206.6, 11B-407, 3001.3
Entrances Chapter 11A, 11B-206.4
Equivalent facilitation 202, Chapter 11A,
11B-103
Exercise machines and equipment 11B-236,
11B-1004
Existing buildings and facilities 1009.1,
1102A, 11B-202
Fire alarm systems 11B-215, 11B-702
Fishing piers and platforms 11B-237, 11B-1005
Floor or ground surfaces 11B-302
General exceptions 11B-203
Golf facilities 11B-238, 11B-1006
Grab bar 202, 1127A, 1134A
Ground floor 202, Chapter 11A
Guard (or guardrail) 1114A, 1116A,
1122A, 1125A
Handrails 1114A, 1115A,
1122A, 1123A, 11B-505
Hazard 1116A, 1125A
Judicial facilities 11B-231, 11B-808
International symbol of accessibility 202,
Chapter 11A, 11B-703.7.2.1
Kitchens, kitchenettes and wet bars 1133A,
11B-212, 11B-804
Knee and toe clearance 11B-306
Knee and toe space 1127A, 1133A,
1134A, 1138A
Laundry 1127A, 1135A
Lifts 1009.5, 1124A
Limited-use/limited-
application elevators 11B-206.6, 11B-408
Live/work unit 419.7
Mail boxes 11B-228
Maintenance of accessible features 11B-108
Mechanical access parking garages 11B-209.5
Medical care and long term care facilities . . . 11B-223,
11B-805
Miniature golf facilities 11B-239, 11B-1007
Multistory dwelling unit 202, 1102A
Operable parts 11B-205, 11B-309
Outdoor developed areas 11B-246
Parking and passenger loading facilities 1109A
Parking spaces 11B-208, 11B-502
Passenger loading zones and
bus stops 11B-209, 11B-503

- | | Path of travel requirements 11B-202.4
- | | Persons with disabilities 202, Chapter 11A
- | | Platform lifts 11B-206.7, 11B-410
- | | Platform (Wheelchair) lift 202, 1124A
- | | Play areas 11B-240, 11B-1008
- | | Powder room 202, 1102A, 1134A
- | | Private residence elevators 11B-206.6, 11B-409
- | | Protruding objects 11B-204, 11B-307
- | | Public accommodations located
 in private residences 11B-245
- | | Ramps 1012, 1114A, 1122A, 11B-405
- | | Reach ranges 1138A, 11B-308
- | | Recreational boating facilities . . 11B-235, 11B-1003
- | | Religious facilities 11B-244
- | | Residential facilities 11B-233, 11B-809
- | | Sales and service 11B-227, 11B-904
- | | Sanitary facilities 202, 1127A
- | | Saunas and steam rooms 11B-241
- | | Scoping 1101A.1, Chapter 11B Division 2
- | | Shooting facilities with firing positions 11B-243,
 11B-1010
- | | Signage, Signs 1009.9, 1109A, 1110A, 1127A,
 1143A, 11B-216, 11B-703
- | | Special conditions appeals action . . 1.9.1.5, 11B-107
- | | Stairways, stairs 1115A, 1123A,
 11B-210, 11B-504
- | | Storage 1127A, 11B-225, 11B-811
- | | Swimming pools 1141A, 11B-242, 11B-1009
- | | Telephone 1140A, 11B-217, 11B-704
- | | Temporary structures 11B-201.3
- | | Toilet and bathing facilities 1127A, 1134A,
 11B-213, Chapter 11B Division 6
- | | Transient lodging 202, 1102A, 11B-224, 11B-806
- | | Transportation facilities 11B-218, 11B-810
- | | Turning space 11B-304
- | | Two-way communication
 systems 1009.8, 11B-230, 11B-708
- | | Valet parking 11B-209.4
- | | Visible alarms 907.5.2.3
- | | Wading pools and spas 11B-242, 11B-1009
- | | Walking surfaces 11B-403
- | | Walks, sidewalks 1113A
- | | Washing machines and
 clothes dryers 11B-214, 11B-611
- | | Windows 1126A, 11B-229
- | | **ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS** 1009
 - Alarms/emergency warning
 systems/accessibility 1009.12
 - Areas of refuge (see AREA OF REFUGE)
 - Assembly 1009.1, 1029.8
 - Elevators 1009.2.1, 1009.4, 1009.8
 - Existing building 1009.1
 - Exterior area for assisted rescue
 (see EXTERIOR AREA FOR ASSISTED RESCUE)
 - Horizontal exit (see HORIZONTAL EXIT)
 - Mezzanine 1009.1
 - Platform lift 1009.5
 - Required 1009.1
 - Stairways 1009.3
 - Signage 1009.8 through 1009.11, 3002.3
- | | **ACCESSORY OCCUPANCIES** 303.1.2, 303.1.4,
 305.1.1, 312.1, 419.1, 508.2
- | | **ADDITION** 1.1.8, 1.9.1, 101.4.8, D103.1
- | | **ADJUSTED CONSTRUCTION COSTS** 202,
 11B-106.5, 11B-202.4
- | | Means of egress 3302.1, 3310
- | | **ADMINISTRATION** Chapter 1, Divisions I and II
- | | **ADOBE CONSTRUCTION** 202, 2109.3
- | | **AEROSOLS** 202, 307.1, 311.2,
 414.1.2.1, 414.2.5, 907.2.16
- | | **AGRICULTURAL BUILDINGS**
 (see GROUP U) 312.1, Appendix C
- | | **AIR CONDITIONING**
 (see MECHANICAL) 2801.1, 3005.2
- | | **AIR INTAKES (see YARDS OR COURTS)** . . 1206.3.2
- | | **AIRCRAFT HANGARS** 412.4
 - Aircraft paint hangars 412.6, 507.10
 - Basements 412.4.2
 - Construction 412.4.1, 412.4.5, 412.6.2
 - Fire area 412.4.6.2
 - Fire suppression system 412.4.6, 412.6.5
 - Heliports and helistops 412.5, 905.3.6,
 906.1, 1605.4
 - Residential 412.5, 907.2.21
 - Unlimited height and area 504.1, 507.10
- | | **AIRCRAFT MANUFACTURING FACILITIES** . . 412.7
- | | **AIRCRAFT-RELATED OCCUPANCIES** . . 412, E110
 - Airport traffic control towers 412.3, 907.2.22
 - Traffic control towers 412.3
 - Alarms and detection . . 412.3.4, 412.3.5, 907.2.22
 - Construction type 412.3.1, 412.3.2
 - Egress 412.3.2, 412.3.3, 412.3.4
- | | **AISLE** 1018, 1029.9, 1029.13
 - Aisle accessways 1018.4, 1029.12
 - Assembly seating 1018.2, 1029.6
 - Bleachers 1029.1.1
 - Business 1018.3
 - Construction 1029.11
 - Converging 1029.9.3
 - Egress 1018, 1029
 - Folding and telescopic seating 1029.1.1
 - Grandstands 1029.1.1
 - Mercantile 1018.3, 1018.4

Obstructions	1029.9.6
Tables	1029.12.1
Tents	3103.4
Transitions	1029.10
Width	1029.9
ALARM SYSTEMS, EMERGENCY	908
ALARMS, FIRE (see FIRE ALARM AND SMOKE DETECTION SYSTEMS)	
ALARMS, VISIBLE	907.5.2.3
Common areas	907.5.2.3.1
Employee work areas	907.5.2.3.1
Group I-1	907.5.2.3.2
Group R-1	907.5.2.3.2
Group R-2	907.5.2.3.3
Public areas	907.5.2.3.1
ALARMS, VOICE	907.5.2.2
Amusement buildings, special	411.6, 907.2.12.3
Covered and open mall buildings	402.7.4, 907.2.20,
Emergency power	2702.2.4
High-rise buildings	403.4.4, 907.2.13
Occupant evacuation elevators	3008.9
Underground buildings	405.8.2, 907.2.19
ALLOWABLE STRESS DESIGN	202
Load combinations	1605.3
Masonry design	2107
Wood design	2301.2, 2306
ALTERATIONS	101.4.7, D103.1
Means of egress	3302.1, 3310.2
ALTERNATING TREAD DEVICES	1011.14
Construction	1011.14.2
Equipment platform	505.5
Heliports	412.8.3
Technical production areas	410.6.3.4
ALTERNATIVE MATERIALS, DESIGN AND METHODS	104.11
ALUMINUM	1404.5.1, 1604.3.5, Chapter 20
AMBULATORY CARE FACILITIES	422
Alarm and detection	907.2.2.1
Smoke compartment	422.2, 422.3
AMUSEMENT BUILDING, SPECIAL	411
Alarm and detection	411.3, 411.5, 907.2.12
Classification	411.1
Emergency voice/alarm communications system	411.6, 907.2.12.3
Exit marking	411.7, 411.7.1
Interior finish	411.8
Sprinklers protection	411.4
AMUSEMENT PARK STRUCTURES	303
ANCHOR STORE (see COVERED MALL AND OPEN MALL BUILDINGS)	402

Construction type	402.4.12
Means of egress	402.8.4.1
Occupant load	402.8.2.3
Separation	402.4.2.2, 402.4.2.3
Sprinkler protection	402.5
ANCHORAGE	1604.8
Braced wall line sills	2308.6.7.3
Concrete	1901.3
Conventional light-frame construction	2308.3.1, 2308.3.2, 2308.4.10
Decks	1604.8.3
Seismic anchorage for masonry chimneys ...	2113.4
Seismic anchorage for masonry fireplaces ...	2111.5
Walls	1604.8.2
Wood sill plates	2308.3
APARTMENT HOUSES	310.4
APPEALS	113, 1.8.8
APPROVED (definition)	202
APPROVED LISTING AGENCY (definition)	202
APPROVED TESTING AGENCY (definition)	202
ARCHITECT (see definition for REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL)	
ARCHITECTURAL TRIM	603.1, 1407.3, 1409.3, D102.2.7
AREA, BUILDING	Chapter 5, 506
Accessory uses	508.2.3
Aircraft hangars, residential	412.5.5
Covered and open mall building	402.4.1
Enclosed parking garage	406.6.1, 510.3
Equipment platforms	505.3.1
Incidental uses	509.3
Limitations	503, 506
Membrane structures	3102.4
Mezzanines	505.2.1
Mixed construction types	3102.6
Mixed occupancy	508.2.3, 508.3.2, 508.4.2
Modifications	506, 510
Open mall building	402.4.1
Open parking garage	406.5.4, 406.5.4.1, 406.5.5, 510.2, 510.3, 510.4, 510.7, 510.8, 510.9
Private garages and carports	406.3.1
Unlimited area	503.1.1, 503.1.3, 506.1.1, 506.2, 507
AREA FOR ASSISTED RESCUE, EXTERIOR (see EXTERIOR AREAS FOR ASSISTED RESCUE)	
AREA OF REFUGE (see ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS)	
Requirements	1009.6
Signage	1009.9, 1009.10, 1009.11
Two-way communication	1009.6.5
Where required	1009.2, 1009.3, 1009.4

ASSEMBLY OCCUPANCY (GROUP A) . . . 303, 1029

- Alarms and detection 907.2.1
- Area 503, 506, 507, 508
- Bleachers (see BLEACHERS)
- Folding and telescopic seating (see BLEACHERS)
- Grandstands (see GRANDSTANDS)
- Group-specific provisions
 - A-1 303.2
 - A-2 303.3
 - A-3 303.4
 - A-4 303.5
 - A-5 303.6
 - Motion picture theater 409, 507.12
 - Special amusement buildings 411
 - Stages and platforms 410
- Height 503, 504, 505, 508, 510
- Incidental uses 509
- Interior finishes Table 803.11, 804
- Live load Table 1607.1, 1607.12.3
- Means of egress
 - Aisles 1018.2, 1029.9, 1029.10
 - Assembly spaces 1029
 - Exit signs 1013.1
 - Guards 1015.2, 1029.16
 - Main exit 1029.3
 - Outdoors 1005.3.1, 1005.3.2, 1006.3, 1009.6.4, 1019.3, 1027, 1029.6.2
 - Panic hardware 1010.1.10, 1010.2.1
 - Stairway, exit access 1019
 - Travel distance 1016.2.1, 1017.2, 1006.3.1, 1006.3.2, 1029.7
- Mixed occupancies 508.3, 508.4
 - Accessory 508.2
 - Education 303.1.3
 - Live/work units 419
 - Mall buildings 402
 - Other occupancies 303.1.1, 303.1.2, 303.1.3
 - Parking below/above 510.7, 510.9
 - Religious facilities 303.1.4
 - Special mixed 510.2
- Motion picture theaters 409, 507.11
- Occupancy exceptions 303.1.1, 303.1.2, 303.1.3, 303.1.4, 305.1.1, 305.2.1
- Plumbing fixtures 2902
- Risk category Table 1604.5
- Seating, fixed (see SEATING, FIXED)
- Seating, smoke-protected 1029.6.2
- Sprinkler protection 410, 504.3, 506.2, 507.3, 507.4, 507.6, 507.7, 507.12, 903.2.1
- Stages and platforms 410, 905.3.4
- Standpipes 905.3.2, 905.3.4, 905.5.1

- Unlimited area 507.4, 507.4.1, 507.6, 507.7, 507.12

ASSISTED LIVING (see GROUP I-1). . . . 308.3, 310.6

- Sixteen or fewer residents (see Group R-4) 308.3.1, 308.3.2, 310.5.1

ATMOSPHERIC ICE LOADS 1614

ATRIUM 404

- Alarms and detection 404.4, 907.2.14
- Enclosure 404.6, 707.3.5
- Interior finish 404.8
- Smoke control 404.5, 909
- Sprinkler protection 404.3
- Standby power 404.7
- Travel distance 404.9, 1016.2.1, 1017.2, 1006.3.2
- Use 404.2

ATTIC

- Access 1209.2
- Combustible storage 413.2
- Draftstopping 718.4
- Insulation 719.3.1
- Live load Table 1607.1
- Unusable space fire protection 711.3.3
- Ventilation 1203.2

AUDITORIUM 303, 305.1.1

- Foyers and lobbies 1029.4
- Interior balconies 1029.5
- Motion picture projection rooms 409
- Stages and platforms 410

AUTOMOBILE PARKING GARAGE (see GARAGE, AUTOMOBILE PARKING) 406

AWNINGS 3105

- Design and construction 3105.3
- Drainage, water 3201.4
- Encroachment, public right-of-way 3202.2.3, 3202.3.1, 3202.4
- Fire district D102.2.8
- Live load Table 1607.1, 1607.12.2.1, 1607.12.4
- Materials 3105.4
- Motor vehicle service stations 406.7.2
- Permanent D102.2.8
- Plastic 2606.10

B

BALCONIES

- Assembly 1029.5
- Construction, exterior 1406.3
- Guards 1015.2
- Live load Table 1607.1
- Means of egress 1021, 1029.5

Open mall building	402.4.3, 402.5	BONDING, MASONRY	2204.3, 2109.2
Projection	705.2, 1406.3	BRACED WALL LINE	202
Public right-of-way encroachments.	3202.3.2, 3202.3.3	Bracing	2308.6
Travel distance	1017.2.1	Seismic requirements	2308.6.10.2, 2308.6.6.2, 2308.6.8
BARBECUES	2801	Sill anchorage	2308.6.7.3
BARRIERS		Spacing	2308.6.1
Fire (see FIRE BARRIER)		Support	2308.6.8
Pedestrian protection	3306	BRACED WALL PANEL	202
Smoke (see SMOKE BARRIER)		Alternative bracing	2308.6.5.1, 2308.6.5.2
Vehicle	406.4.3, 1602.1, 1607.8.3	Connections	2308.6.7
BASEMENT		Length	2308.6.4
Aircraft hangars	412.4.2	Location	2308.6.2
Area modification	506.1.3	Method	2308.6.3
Considered a story	202	BRICK (see MASONRY)	
Emergency escape	1030.1	BUILDING	
Exits	106.3.2.2	Area (see AREA, BUILDING)	502.1, 503, 505, 506, 507, 508, 510
Flood loads	1612.2, 1612.5	Demolition	3303
Height modifications for	510.5	Existing	101.4.8
Prohibited	415.6, 415.7, 415.11.5.2, 418.1	Fire walls	706.1
Rodentproofing	Appendix F	Height (see HEIGHT, BUILDING)	502.1, 503, 504, 505, 508, 510
Sprinkler protection	903.2.11.1	Occupancy classification	Chapter 3
Waterproofing and dampproofing	1805	Party walls	706.1.1
BASEMENT WALLS		BUILDING DEPARTMENT	103
Soil loads	1610.1	BUILDING OFFICIAL	
Waterproofing and dampproofing	1805	Approval	202
BATH AND BATHING ROOMS		Duties and powers	103
(see TOILET AND TOILET ROOMS)	101.4.3, 105.2, Chapter 29	Qualifications	A101.1
BAY AND ORIEL WINDOWS	1406.4	Records	104.7
Public right-of-way encroachments.	3202.3.2, 3202.3.3	Termination	A101.4
BLEACHERS	303.6, 1029.1.1	BUILT-UP ROOFS	1507.10
Egress	1029.1.1	BUSINESS OCCUPANCY (GROUP B)	303.1.1, 303.1.2, 304
Live load	Table 1607.1	Alarms and detection	907.2.2
Occupant load	1004.7	Ambulatory care facilities	304, 422
Separation	1029.1.1.1	Area	503, 505, 506, 507, 508
BLOCK (see CONCRETE BLOCK		Height	503, 504, 505, 508, 510
AND GLASS UNIT MASONRY)		Incidental uses	509
BOARD OF APPEALS	113, Appendix B	Interior finishes	Table 803.11, 804
Alternate members	B101.2.1	Live load	Table 1607.1
Application for appeal	B101.1	Means of egress	
Board decision	B101.4	Aisles	1018.3
Limitations on authority	113.2	Stairway, exit access	1019
Membership of board	B101.2	Travel distance	1016.2.1, 1017.2, 1006.3.2
Notice of meeting	B101.3	Mixed occupancies	508.2, 508.3, 508.4
Qualifications	113.3, B101.2.2	Accessory	303.1.2, 508.2
BOILER ROOM		Ambulatory care facilities	422
Exits	1006.2.2.1	Assembly	303.1.2
BOLTS	2204.2	Educational	303.1, 304.1
Anchor rods	1908, 1909, 2204.2.1		

Live/work units	419
Mall buildings	402
Parking below/above	510.7, 510.8, 510.9
Special mixed	510.2
Occupancy exceptions	303.1.1, 303.1.2
Plumbing fixtures	2902
Risk category	Table 1604.5
Sprinkler protection	903.2.2
Unlimited area	507.4, 507.5

C

CABLES, STEEL STRUCTURAL	2208
---	------

CALCULATED FIRE RESISTANCE (see FIRE RESISTANCE, CALCULATED)

CANOPIES	3105
Design and construction	3105.3
Drainage, water	3201.4
Encroachment, public right-of-way	3202.3.1
Fire district	D102.2.8
Live load	Table 1607.1, 1607.12.2.1, 1607.12.4
Materials	3105.4
Motor vehicle service stations	406.7.2
Permanent	D102.2.8
Plastic	2606.10

CALIFORNIA ADMINISTRATION	Chapter 1, Division I
--	--------------------------

CARBON MONOXIDE ALARMS (residential)	420.6
--	-------

CARE FACILITIES (see HEALTH CARE)

CARE PROVIDER STATIONS	407.2.2
---	---------

CARE SUITES	202, 407.4.4
------------------------------	--------------

CARPET

Floor covering	804.2
Textile ceiling finish	803.6
Textile wall coverings	803.5

CATWALKS

(see TECHNICAL PRODUCTION AREAS)

Construction	410.3.2
Live loads	Table 1607.1
Means of egress	410.6.3
Sprinkler protection	410.7

CEILING

Acoustical	808
Height	406.4.1, 409.2, 909.20.4.3, 1003.2, 1011.3, 1010.5.2, 1205.2.2, 1208.2
Interior finish	803
Penetration of fire-resistant assemblies	713.4, 716.2, 716.6
Suspended acoustical	808.1.1

CELLULOSE NITRATE FILM	409.1, 903.2.5.3
---	------------------

CERAMIC TILE

Mortar	2103.2.3
------------------	----------

CERTIFICATE OF OCCUPANCY	106.2, 111
---	------------

CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY	101.4.8, D103.2
--------------------------------------	-----------------

CHILD CARE (see DAY CARE)	305.2, 308.6, 310.5.1
--	--------------------------

CHILDREN'S PLAY STRUCTURES	424
---	-----

Covered and open mall building	402.6.3
--	---------

CHIMNEYS	202
---------------------------	-----

Factory-built	718.2.5
-------------------------	---------

Flashing	1503.6, 1507.7.7
--------------------	------------------

Masonry	2111, 2112, 2113
-------------------	------------------

Protection from adjacent construction	3307.1
---	--------

CHURCHES

(see RELIGIOUS WORSHIP, PLACES OF)

CIRCULAR STAIRWAYS

(see CURVED STAIRWAYS)

CLAY ROOF TILE	1507.3, 1513
---------------------------------	--------------

Testing	1504.2
-------------------	--------

CLINIC

Hospital [see INSTITUTIONAL (GROUP I-2)]	308.3
Outpatient (see AMBULATORY CARE FACILITIES)	202, 304.1, 422

CLINICS [OSHPD 3]	1226
------------------------------------	------

Application	1226.2
-----------------------	--------

Definitions	1226.3
-----------------------	--------

Scope	1226.1
-----------------	--------

CLINICS — GENERAL CONSTRUCTION	1226.4
---	--------

Ceiling heights	1226.4.6
---------------------------	----------

Compactors	1226.4.10
----------------------	-----------

Corridors	1226.4.3
---------------------	----------

Doors and door openings	1226.4.4
-----------------------------------	----------

Elevators	1226.4.8
---------------------	----------

Examination and treatment areas	1226.4.1
---	----------

General support services and facilities	1226.4.15
---	-----------

Garbage, solid waste, medical waste and trash storage	1226.4.9
--	----------

Housekeeping room	1226.4.11
-----------------------------	-----------

Interior finishes	1226.4.7
-----------------------------	----------

Laundry and trash chutes	1226.4.12
------------------------------------	-----------

Miscellaneous requirements	1226.4.2
--------------------------------------	----------

Public and administrative areas	1226.4.16
---	-----------

Support areas for examination and treatment rooms	1226.4.13
--	-----------

Support areas for patients	1226.4.14
--------------------------------------	-----------

Support areas for staff	1226.4.17
-----------------------------------	-----------

Windows	1226.4.5
-------------------	----------

CLINICS — OUTPATIENT SERVICES OF A HOSPITAL

Cancer treatment/infusion therapy	1226.5.13
---	-----------

Gastrointestinal endoscopy	1226.5.11
--------------------------------------	-----------

General support areas for outpatient clinical services	1226.5	Rodentproofing	Appendix F
Hyperbaric therapy service space	1226.5.14	Roof tile	1507.3, 1504.2, 1513
Nuclear medicine	1226.5.12	Shotcrete	1908
Radiological/imaging service space	1226.5.5	Slab, minimum	1907
CLINICS — PRIMARY CARE AND SPECIALTY CLINICS		Special inspections	1705.3, Table 1705.3
Alternative birthing clinics	1226.11	Specifications	1903
Chronic dialysis clinics	1226.9	Strength testing	1705.3.2
Primary care clinics	1226.6	Wood support	2304.13
Rehabilitation clinics	1226.10	CONCRETE MASONRY	
Surgical clinics	1226.8	Calculated fire resistance	721.3
Psychology clinics	1226.12	Construction	2104
COAL POCKETS	426.1.6	Design	2101.2, 2108, 2109
CODES	101.2, 101.4, 102.2, 102.4, 102.6, Chapter 35	Materials	2103.1
COLD STORAGE (see FOAM PLASTIC INSULATION)		Surface bonding	2109.2
COLD-FORMED STEEL	202, 2210	Wood support	2304.13
Light-frame construction	2211	CONCRETE ROOF TILE	1507.3, 1513
Special inspection	1705.2.2, 1705.2.4, 1705.11.2, 1705.12.3	Wind resistance	1504.2, 1609.5.3
COMBUSTIBLE DUSTS	307.4, 414.5.1, 426.1	CONDOMINIUM (see APARTMENT HOUSES)	
COMBUSTIBLE LIQUIDS	307.1, 307.4, 307.5, 414.2.5, 414.5.3, 415.9.2, 415.10.1, 418.6	CONDUIT, PENETRATION PROTECTION	713.3, 1023.5
COMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL		CONFLICTS IN CODE	102
Concealed spaces	413.2, 718.5	CONGREGATE LIVING FACILITIES	202, 310
Exterior side of exterior wall	1406	CONSTRUCTION (see SAFEGUARDS DURING CONSTRUCTION)	
High-pile stock or rack storage	413.1, 910.2.2	CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS	107, 202, 1603, 1616.1
Type I and Type II	603, 805	Alarms and detection	907.1.1
COMBUSTIBLE PROJECTIONS	705.2, 1406.3	Concrete construction	1901.5
COMBUSTIBLE STORAGE	413, 910.2.2	Design load-bearing capacity	1803.6
COMMON PATH OF EGRESS TRAVEL	1016.2.1	Fire-resistant joint systems	714
COMPARTMENTATION		Flood	1603.1.7
Ambulatory care facilities	422.2, 422.3	Floor live load	1603.1.1
Group I-2	407.5, 407.6	Geotechnical	1603.1.6
Group I-3	408.6	Means of egress	107.2.3
Underground buildings	405.4, 405.5.2	Penetrations	713
COMPLIANCE ALTERNATIVES	101.4.8	Permit application	105.1
COMPRESSED GAS	307.2, 415.11.7	Retention	107.5
CONCEALED SPACES	413.2, 718	Review	107.3
CONCRETE	Chapter 19, <i>Chapter 19A</i>	Roof assemblies	1503
ACI 318 modifications	1901.2, 1903.1, 1905	Roof live load	1603.1.2
Anchorage	1901.3	Roof snow load	1603.1.3
Calculated fire resistance	721.2	Seismic	1603.1.5
Construction documents	1901.5	Seismic certification	1705.13.2, 1705.13.3
Durability	1904	Site plan	107.2.5
Footings	1809	Special loads	1603.1.8
Foundation walls	1807.1.5, 1808.8	Temporary structures	3103.2
Materials	1705.3.2, 1903	Wind load	1603.1.4
Plain, structural	1906	CONSTRUCTION JOINTS	
Reinforced gypsum concrete	2514	Shotcrete	1908.7
		CONSTRUCTION TYPES	Chapter 6
		Aircraft paint hangers	412.6.2
		Classification	602

Combustible material in
 Type I and Type II construction 603, 805
 Covered and open mall buildings 402.4.1
 Fire district D102.2.3
 Fire resistance Table 601, Table 602
 High-rise 403.2
 Type I Table 601, 602.2, 603
 Type II Table 601, 602.2, 603
 Type III Table 601, 602.3
 Type IV Table 601, 602.4
 Type V Table 601, 602.5
 Underground buildings 405.2

CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES . . 901.5, 1704.4

CONTROL AREA 414.2, 707.3.7
 Fire-resistance rating 414.2.4
 Maximum allowed quantities 414.2.2
 Number 414.2.3

CONVENTIONAL LIGHT-FRAME

CONSTRUCTION 202, 2301.2, 2308
 Additional seismic requirements 2308.6.6,
 2308.6.8, 2308.6.10
 Braced wall lines 2308.6
 Connections and fasteners 2308.1.2
 Design of elements 2308.8
 Floor joists 2308.4.2
 Foundation plates or sills 2308.3
 Girders 2308.7
 Limitations 2308.2
 Roof and ceiling framing 2308.7
 Wall framing 2308.5

CONVEYING SYSTEMS 3004

CORNICES

Definition 202
 Draftstopping 718.2.6
 Live load Table 1607.1
 Masonry 2104.1.2
 Projection 705.2, 1406.3
 Public right-of-way encroachments 3202.3.2,
 3202.3.3

CORRECTIONAL TREATMENT

CENTERS [OSHPD 4] 1227
Application 1227.2
Ceiling heights 1227.8
Corridors 1227.5
Definitions 1227.3
Doors and door openings 1227.6
Elevators 1227.10
Garbage-soiled waste and trash storage . . . 1227.11
General construction 1227.4
Interior finishes 1227.9
Scope 1227.1

Windows and screens 1227.7
Interior finishes 1227.9

**CORRECTIONAL TREATMENT CENTERS –
 BASIC SERVICES**

Administration space 1227.16
Central sterile supply 1227.17
Dietetic service space 1227.14
Employee dressing rooms and lockers 1227.19
Housekeeping room 1227.20
Nursing service space 1227.12
Offices 1227.15
Pharmaceutical service space 1227.13
Storage 1227.18

**CORRECTIONAL TREATMENT CENTERS –
 OPTIONAL SERVICES**

24-hour mental health care services 1227.23
Outpatient services 1227.22
Service spaces 1227.21

CORRIDOR

**(see CORRIDOR PROTECTION,
 EXIT ACCESS, FIRE PARTITIONS
 and SERVICE CORRIDORS)**

1020
 Air movement 1020.5
 Continuity 1020.6
 Covered and open mall buildings . . . 402.8.1, 402.8.6
 Dead end 1020.4
 Encroachment 1020.3
 Elevation change 1003.5
 Group I-2 407.2, 407.3, 407.4.1, 407.4.3
 Hazardous 415.11
 Headroom 1003.2, 1003.3
 HPM service 903.2.5.2
 Live load Table 1607.1
 Walls 709.1, 1020.1
 Width/capacity 1003.3.4, 1003.6,
 1005.2, 1005.7, 1020.2, 1020.3

CORRIDOR PROTECTION, EXIT ACCESS

Construction, fire protection 709.1,
 Table 1020.1, 1020.6
 Doors 715.4
 Glazing 715.5
 Group I-2 407.3
 Interior finish Table 803.11, 804.4
 Opening protection 715, 716.5.4.1
 Ventilation 1020.5, 1020.5.1

CORROSIVES 307.2, 307.6,
 Table 414.2.5(1), 414.3,
 415.10.3, Table 415.11.1.1.1

COURTS (see YARDS OR COURTS) 1206

COVERED AND OPEN MALL BUILDINGS 402
 Alarms and detection 402.7.4, 907.2.20,
 2702.2.14

Children's play structures	402.6.3, 424
Construction type	402.4
Fire department	402.3, 402.7.5
Interior finish	402.6.1
Kiosk	402.6.2
Means of egress	402.8
Occupant load	402.8.3
Open mall construction	402.4.3
Perimeter line	402.1.2
Separation	402.4.2
Signs	402.6.4
Smoke control	402.7.2
Sprinkler protection	402.5
Standby power	402.7.3, 2702.2.14
Standpipe system	402.7.1, 905.3.3
Travel distance	402.8.5, 1016.2.1, 1017.2, 1006.3.2

COVERED WALKWAY
(see **PEDESTRIAN WALKWAY**) 3104, 3306.7

CRAWL SPACE	
Access	1209.1
Drainage	1805.1.2
Unusable space fire protection	711.3.3
Ventilation	1203.4

CRIPPLE WALL 202, 2308.6.6.2, 2308.9.4

CROSS-LAMINATED TIMBER 602.4.2

CRYOGENIC Table 307.1,
Table 414.5.1, Table 415.11.1.1.1

D

DAMPERS (see FIRE DAMPERS AND SMOKE DAMPERS) 716.2 through 716.5

DAMPPROOFING AND WATERPROOFING	1805
Required	1805.2, 1805.3
Subsoil drainage system	1805.4

DAY CARE	305.2, 308.6, 310.5
Adult care	308.6
Child care	308.6, 310.5
Egress	308.6, Table 1004.1.1, 1006.2.2.4

DAY SURGERY CENTER
(see **AMBULATORY CARE FACILITIES**)

DEAD END 1020.4

DEAD LOAD	202, 1606
Foundation design load	1808.3

DECK	
Anchorage	1604.8.3
Live loads	Table 1607.1

DEFINITIONS (Access) Chapter 2

DEFLECTIONS	1604.3.1
Framing supporting glass	2403.3
Preconstruction load tests	1709.3.1

Wood diaphragms	2305
Wood shear walls	2305

DEMOLITION 3303

DESIGN STRENGTH	202
Conformance to standards	1706.1
New materials	1706.2

DESIGNATED SEISMIC SYSTEM	202
Seismic certification	1705.13.3
Special inspection	1705.12.4

DETACHED SINGLE-FAMILY DWELLING 202

DIAPHRAGMS	202
Analysis	1604.4
Ceilings	2508.5
Special inspection	1705.5.1, 1705.11.1, 1705.12.2
Wood	2305, 2306.2

DOORS 1010, *Chapter 11A*

Access-controlled	1010.1.9.8
Atrium enclosures	404.6
Configuration	1007
Dwelling unit separations	406.3.4, 412.5.1
Emergency escape	1030.1
Fabrication (HPM) areas	415.11.1.2
Fire (see OPENING PROTECTIVES)	715.4, 1023.4
Glazing	715.4.7, 715.5, 1405.13
Hazardous storage	415.11.5.7
Hardware (see LOCKS AND LATCHES)	1005.7.1, 1010.1.9.8, 1010.1.9, 1010.1.10

Horizontal sliding	1010.1.4.3
I-2 occupancies	407.3.1
I-3 occupancies	408.3, 408.4, 408.8.4
Landings	1010.1.5, 1010.1.6
Operation	1010.1.3, 1010.1.9, 1010.1.10
Panic and fire exit hardware	1010.1.10
Power-operated	1010.1.4.2
Revolving	1010.1.4.1
Security grilles	402.8.8, 1010.1.4.4
Side swinging	1010.1.2
Smoke	710.5
Stairways	1010.1.9.11
Stairways, high-rise	403.5.3
Structural testing, exterior	1709.5
Thresholds	1003.5, 1010.1.5, 1010.1.7
Vestibule	1010.1.8
Width	1010.1.1, 1010.1.1.1

DRAFTSTOPPING	
Attics	718.4
Floor-ceiling assemblies	718.3

DRY CLEANING PLANTS 415.9.3

DRYING ROOMS 417
DUCTS AND AIR TRANSFER OPENINGS
 (see **MECHANICAL**)
DUMBWAITERS 708.14
DWELLING UNITS 202
 Accessibility *Chapter 11A*
 Alarms and detection 420.6, 907.2.8,
 907.2.9, 907.2.11
 Area 1208.3, 1208.4
 Group R 310
 Live/work units (see **LIVE/WORK UNITS**)
 Scoping 101.2
 Separation 420.2, 420.3
 Sound transmission 1207
 Sprinkler protection 420.5, 903.2.8

E

EARTHQUAKE LOADS (see SEISMIC) 1613
EARTHQUAKE RECORDING EQUIPMENT Appendix L
EAVES (see COMBUSTIBLE PROJECTIONS AND CORNICES)
EDUCATIONAL OCCUPANCY (GROUP E) 305
 Alarms and detection 907.2.3
 Area 503, 505, 506, 507, 508
 Height 503, 504, 505, 508
 Incidental uses 509
 Interior finishes Table 803.11, 804
 Live load Table 1607.1
 Means of egress
 Aisles 1018.5
 Corridors 1020.1, 1020.2
 Panic hardware 1010.1.10
 Stairway, exit access 1019
 Travel distance 1016.2.1, 1017.2, 1006.3.2
 Mixed occupancies 508.3, 508.4
 Accessory 303.1.3, 508.2
 Assembly 303.1.3
 Day care 305.2, 308.5, 310.1
 Education for students
 above the 12th grade 304
 Gyms (see **GYMNASIUMS**) 303.1.3
 Libraries (see **LIBRARIES**) 303.4
 Religious facilities 305.2
 Stages and platforms 410
 Plumbing fixtures 2902
 Risk category Table 1604.5
 Sprinkler protection 903.2.3
 Unlimited area 507.11
EFFICIENCY DWELLING UNIT 1208.4
EGRESS (see MEANS OF EGRESS) Chapter 10

ELECTRICAL 105.2, 112, Chapter 27, Appendix K
ELEVATOR Chapter 30
 Accessibility 1009.2.1, 1009.4,
 1009.8, 1124A, 3001.3
 Car size 403.6.1, 3001.3, 3002.4
 Construction 708.14, 1607.9.1
 Conveying systems 3004
 Emergency operations 3002.3, 3002.5,
 3003, 3007.1, 3008.1.3
 Fire service access 403.6.1, 3007
 Glass 2409, 3002.8
 High-rise 403.2.3, 403.4.8, 403.6
 Hoistway enclosures 403.2.3, 708, 1023.4,
 1024.5, 3002, 3007.5, 3008.5
 Hoistway lighting 3007.5.2
 Hoistway pressurization 909.21
 Keys 3003.3
 Lobby 708.14.1, 709.1, 1009.4,
 1009.8, 3006, 3007.6, 3008.6
 Machine rooms Table 1607.1, 3005
 Means of egress 403.6, 1003.7,
 1009.2.1, 1009.4, 3008
 Number of elevator cars in hoistway 3002.2
 Occupant evacuation elevators 403.6.2, 3008
 Personnel and material hoists 3004.4
 Roof access 1011.12.2
 Shaft enclosure 712, 3006
 Signs 914, 1009.10, 3002.3,
 3007.6.5, 3008.6.5
 Stairway to elevator equipment 1011.12.2.1
 Standards 3001
 Standby power 2702.2.2, 3007.8, 3008.8
 System monitoring 3007.7, 3008.7
 Underground 405.4.3
EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS
 Accessible means of egress 1009.8
 Alarms (see **FIRE ALARMS**)
 Elevators, occupant evacuation 3008.6.6
 Fire command center 403.4.6, 911,
 3007.7, 3008.6.6, 3008.7
 Radio coverage 403.4.5, 916
EMERGENCY EGRESS OPENINGS 1030
 Required Table 1006.3.2(2), 1030.1
 Window wells 1030.5
EMERGENCY LIGHTING 1008.3, 1205.5
EMERGENCY POWER 2702.1, 2702.4
 Exit signs 1013.6.3, 2702.2.5, 2702.2.12
 Group I-2 2702.2.6
 Group I-3 408.4.2, 2702.2.7
 Hazardous 415.11.10, 2702.2.13,
 2702.2.14
 High-rise 403.4.8, 2702.2.9

2016 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

JANUARY 1, 2017 ERRATA
BUFF

Travel distance 402.8.3, 402.8.5,
402.8.6, 404.9, 408.6.1,
408.8.1, 410.6.3.2, 411.4,
1006.2, 1016.2.1, 1017,
1006.3.2, 1029.7

EXIT DISCHARGE

(see MEANS OF EGRESS) 1028

Atrium 404.10

Courts 1028.4

Horizontal exit 1028.1

Lobbies 1028.1

Marquees 3106.4

Public way 1028.5

Termination 1023.3

Vestibules 1028.1

EXIT PASSAGEWAY

(see MEANS OF EGRESS) 402.8.6.1,
707.3.4, 1024

EXIT SIGNS 1013

Accessibility 1013.4

Floor level exit signs 1013.2

Group R-1 1013.2

Illumination 1013.3, 1013.5, 1013.6

Required 1013.1

Special amusement buildings 411.7

EXPLOSIVES 202, Table 414.5.1, Table 415.6.2

Detached building 415.6.2, 415.8

Explosion control 415.7

EXPOSURE CATEGORY

(see WIND LOAD) 1609.4

EXTERIOR AREAS FOR ASSISTED RESCUE

Requirements 1009.7

Signage 1009.9, 1009.10, 1009.11

Where required 1009.2

EXTERIOR INSULATION AND

FINISH SYSTEMS (EIFS) 1408

Special inspection 1705.16

EXTERIOR WALLS

(see WALLS, EXTERIOR) Table 601,
602, 705, Chapter 14

F

FACTORY OCCUPANCY (GROUP F) 306

Alarm and detection 907.2.4

Area 503, 503.1.1, 505,
506, 507, 508

Equipment platforms 505.2

Groups

Low-hazard occupancy 306.3

Moderate-hazard occupancy 306.2

Height 503, 504, 505, 508

Incidental uses 509

Interior finishes Table 803.11, 804

Live load Table 1607.1

Means of Egress

Aisles 1018.5

Dead end corridor 1020.4

Stairway, exit access 1019

Travel distance 1006.2, 1016.2.1,
1017.2, 1017.2.2, 1006.3.2

Mixed occupancies 508.2, 508.3, 508.4

Plumbing fixtures 2902

Risk category Table 1604.5

Sprinkler protection 903.2.4

Unlimited area 507.3, 507.4, 507.5

FARM BUILDINGS Appendix C

FEES, PERMIT 109

Refunds 109.6

Related fees 109.5

Work commencing before issuance 109.4

FENCES 105.2, 312.1

FIBERBOARD 202, 2303.1.6

Shear wall Table 2306.3(2)

FILL MATERIAL 1804, 3304

FINGER-JOINTED LUMBER

(see END-JOINTED LUMBER)

FIRE ALARM AND SMOKE DETECTION SYSTEMS

Aerosol storage 907.2.16

Aircraft hangars, residential 412.5.3, 907.2.21

Airport traffic control towers 412.3.5, 907.2.22

Ambulatory care facilities 422.5, 907.2.2.1

Assembly 907.2.1

Atriums 404.4, 907.2.14

Audible alarm 907.5.2.1

Battery room 907.2.23

Children's play structure 424.3

Construction documents 907.1.1

Covered and open mall building 402.6.2, 402.7,
907.2.20

Education 907.2.3

Emergency alarm system 908

Factory 907.2.4

Group H 907.2.5

Group I 907.2.6, 907.5.2.3.2

Group M 907.2.7

Group R 420.6, 907.2.8, 907.2.9,
907.2.10, 907.2.11,
907.5.2.3.2, 907.5.2.3.3

High-rise 403.4.1, 403.4.2, 907.2.13

Live/work 419.5

Lumber mills 907.2.17

Occupancy requirements 907.2

Special amusement buildings 411.3,
411.5, 907.2.12

Underground buildings	405.6, 907.2.18, 907.2.19	FIRE DETECTION SYSTEM (see FIRE ALARM AND SMOKE DETECTION SYSTEMS)	
Visible alarm	907.5.2.3	FIRE DISTRICT	Appendix D
FIRE ALARM BOX, MANUAL	907.4.2	FIRE DOOR	
FIRE AREA	202, 901.7	(see OPENING PROTECTIVES)	716, 1023.4
Ambulatory care facilities	903.2.2, 907.2.2	FIRE ESCAPE	412.8.3
Assembly	903.2.1	FIRE EXTINGUISHERS, PORTABLE	906, 3309
Education	903.2.3	FIRE EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS	416.5, 417.4, 903, 904
Enclosed parking garages	903.2.10	FIRE PARTITION	202, 709
Factory	903.2.4	Continuity	708.4
Institutional	903.2.6	Elevator lobby	3006.3
Mercantile	903.2.7	Exterior walls	Table 602, 709.5
Residential	903.2.8	Fire-resistance rating	603.1(1), 603.1(22), 603.1(23), 703, 708.3
Storage	903.2.9, 903.2.10	Glazing, rated	716.6
FIRE BARRIERS	202, 707	Inspection	110.3.6
Continuity	707.5, 713.5	Joint treatment gypsum	2508.4
Exterior walls	Table 602, 707.4, 713.6	Joints	708.8, 715
Fire-resistance rating of walls	603.1(1), 603.1(22), 603.1(23), 703, 707.3, 713.4	Marking	703.6
Glazing, rated	716.6	Materials	708.2
Incidental	509.4	Opening protection	709.6, 714.3, 716, 717.5.4
Inspection	110.3.6	Penetrations	708.7, 708.9, 714, 717
Joints	707.8, 713.9, 715, 2508.4	Special provisions	
Marking	703.7	Covered and open mall buildings	402.4.2.1
Materials	707.2, 713.3	Group I-3	408.7
Opening protection	707.6, 707.10, 713.7, 713.10, 714.3, 716, 717.5.2	Group I-1, R-1, R-2, R-3	420.2
Penetrations	707.7, 713.8	FIRE PREVENTION	101.4.5
Shaft enclosure	713.1	FIRE PROTECTION	
Special provisions		Explosion control	414.5.1, 415.6, 421.7, 426.1.4
Aircraft hangars	412.4.4	Fire extinguishers, portable	906
Atriums	404.3, 404.6	Glazing, rated	716.2
Covered and open mall buildings	402.4.2,	Smoke and heat removal	910
Fire pumps	403.3.4, 901.8, 913.2.1	Smoke control systems	909
Flammable finishes	416.2	Sprinkler systems, automatic	903
Group H-2	415.9.1.2, 426.1.2	FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEMS	Chapter 9
Group H-3 and H-4	415.10	FIRE PUMPS	403.3.4, 901.8, 913, 914.2
Group H-5	415.11.1.2, 415.11.1.5, 415.11.5.1, 415.11.6.4	FIRE RESISTANCE	
Group I-3	408.5, 408.7	Calculated	722
Hazardous materials	414.2	Conditions of restraint	703.2.3
High-rise	403.2.1.2, 403.2.3, 403.3, 403.4.8.1	Ducts and air transfer openings	717
Organic coating	418.4, 418.5, 418.6	Exterior walls	Table 602, 705.5, 708.5
Stages and platforms	410.5.1, 410.5.2	Fire district	D102.2.5
FIRE COMMAND CENTER	403.4.6, 911, 3007.7, 3008.6.6, 3008.7	High-rise	403.2
FIRE DAMPERS	717.2 through 717.5	Joint systems	715
FIRE DEPARTMENT		Multiple use fire assemblies	701.2
(see EMERGENCY RESPONDERS)		Prescriptive	721
		Ratings	Chapter 6, 703, 705.5, 707.3.10
		Roof assemblies	1505
		Structural members	704

Tests	703
Thermal and sound insulating materials	720.1
FIRE RESISTANCE, CALCULATED	722
Clay brick and tile masonry	722.4
Concrete assemblies	722.2
Concrete masonry	722.3
Steel assemblies	722.5
Wood assemblies	722.6
FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED WOOD	202, 2303.2
Awnings	3105.3
Balconies	1406.3
Canopies	3105.3
Concealed spaces	718.5
Fastening	2304.10.5
Fire wall vertical continuity	706.6
Partitions	603.1(1)
Platforms	410.4
Projections	705.2.3
Roof construction	Table 601, 705.11, 706.6, 1505
Shakes and shingles	1505.6
Type I and II construction	603.1(1), 603.1(11)
Type III construction	602.3
Type IV construction	602.4
Veneer	1405.5
FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE	202, Table 602, 702
Exterior walls	1406.2.1.1.1, 1406.2.1.1.2
FIRE SERVICE ACCESS ELEVATORS	403.6.1, 3007
FIRE SHUTTER (see OPENING PROTECTIVES)	716.5, 716.5.10, 716.5.11
FIRE WALLS	706
Aircraft	412.4.6.2
Combustible framing	706.7
Continuity	706.5, 706.6
Exterior walls	Table 602, 706.5.1
Fire-resistance rating	703, 706.4
Glazing, rated	716.6
Inspection	110.3.6
Joints	706.10, 715
Marking	703.6
Materials	706.3
Opening protection	706.8, 706.11, 714.3, 716, 717.5.1
Penetration	706.9, 714.3
Special provisions	
Aircraft hangars	412.4.6.2
Covered and open mall buildings	402.4.2.2
Group H-5	415.11.1.6
Structural stability	706.2

FIRE WINDOWS (see OPENING PROTECTIVES)	
FIREBLOCKING	718.2
Chimneys	718.2.5.1, 2113.20
Fireplaces	2111.13
Wood construction	718.2.1, 718.2.7, 1406.2.3
Wood stairways	718.2.4
FIREPLACES, FACTORY-BUILT	2111.14.1
FIREPLACES, MASONRY	202
Combustibles	2111.12
Drawings	2111.2
General provisions	2111
Hearth extension	2111.10, 2111.11
Steel units	2111.6.1
FIREWORKS	202, 307.2, 307.3, 307.5
FLAMESPREAD	802, 803.1.1, Table 803.11
FLAMMABLE FINISHES	307.1, 416
FLAMMABLE LIQUIDS	307.4, 307.5, 406, 412, 414, 415
FLAMMABLE SOLIDS	307.5, 415
FLASHING	
Roof	1503.2, 1503.6, 1507.2.9, 1507.3.9, 1507.5.7, 1507.7.7, 1507.8.8, 1507.9.9, 1511.6
Wall, veneer	1405.4, 1405.10.1.2, 1405.12.7
FLOOD HAZARD AREAS	202, 1612.3
Coastal A zone	202
Coastal high hazard area	202
Flood insurance rate map	202
FLOOD-RESISTANT CONSTRUCTION	
Administration	G101 through G105
Elevation certificate	110.3.3
Existing	101.4.8
Flood elevation	107.2.5.1, 1612
Flood loads	1603.1, 1603.1.7, 1612, 3001.2, 3102.7
Flood resistance	1403.6, 1403.7
Flood-resistant construction	Appendix G
Grading and fill	1804.5, 1805.1.2.1
Historic buildings	G105.3
Interior finishes	801.1.3
Manufactured homes	G501
Modifications	104.10.1
Recreational vehicles	G601
Site improvements	G401
Site plan	107.2.5
Subdivisions	G301
Tank	G701
Temporary	G901
Utility	G1001
Ventilation, under floor	1203.3.2
FLOOR/CEILING (see FLOOR CONSTRUCTION)	

FLOOR CONSTRUCTION

(see FLOOR CONSTRUCTION, WOOD)

Draftstopping 718.3
 Finishes 804, 805, 1003.4, 1210.1
 Fire resistance Table 601, 711
 Loads (see FLOOR LOADS)
 Materials Chapter 6
 Penetration of fire-resistant assemblies 711,
 714.4, 717.2, 717.6

FLOOR CONSTRUCTION, WOOD

Beams and girders 2304.12.1.1, 2308.4.1
 Bridging/blocking 2308.4.6, 2308.7.8
 Diaphragms 2305.1
 Fastening schedule 2304.10.1
 Framing Table 602.4, 602.4.2, 602.4.4, 2304.4
 Joists 2308.4.2
 Sheathing 2304.8

FLOOR LEVEL 1003.5, 1010.1.5

FLOOR LOADS

Construction documents 107.2
 Live 1603.1.1, 1607
 Posting 106.1

FLOOR OPENING PROTECTION

(see VERTICAL OPENING PROTECTION)

FOAM PLASTICS

Attics 720.1, 2603.4.1.6
 Cladding attachment 2603.11, 2603.12
 Cold storage 2603.3, 2603.4.1.2, 2603.5
 Concealed 603
 Covered mall and open mall buildings 402.6.2,
 402.6.4.5
 Crawl space 2603.4.1.6
 Doors 2603.4.1.7 through 2603.4.1.9
 Exterior wall covering 806.5
 Exterior walls of multistory buildings 1404.13,
 2603.5
 Interior finish 801.2.2, 2603.10, 2604
 Label/identification 2603.2
 Metal composite materials (MCM) 1407.13
 Roofing 2603.4.1.5
 Siding backer board 2603.4.1.10
 Stages and platform scenery 410.3.6
 Surface burning characteristics 2603.3
 Termites, protection from 2603.9
 Thermal barrier requirements 2603.5.2
 Trim 806.5, 2604.2
 Type I and II construction 603.1(2), 603.1(3)
 Walk-in coolers 2603.4.1.3
 Wind resistance 2603.10

FOLDING AND TELESCOPIC SEATING 1029.1.1

Egress 1029.1.1
 Live load Table 1607.1

Occupant load 1004.7
 Separation 1029.1.1.1

FOOD COURT 202

Occupant load 402.8.2.4
 Separation 402.4.2

FOOTBOARDS 1029.16.2

FOUNDATION (see FOUNDATION, DEEP

and FOUNDATION, SHALLOW) Chapter 18,
 Chapter 18A

Basement 1610, 1805.1.1, 1806.3, 1807
 Concrete 1808.8, 1809.8, 1810.3.2.1
 Dampproofing 1805.2
 Encroachment, public right-of-way 3202.1
 Formwork 3304.1
 Geotechnical investigation
 (see SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS) 1803
 Inspection 110.3.1
 Load-bearing value 1806, 1808, 1810
 Masonry 1808.9
 Pedestrian protection 3306.9
 Pier (see FOUNDATION, SHALLOW)
 Pile (see FOUNDATION, DEEP)
 Plates or sills 2308.3
 Protection from
 adjacent construction 3303.5, 3307.1
 Rodentproofing Appendix F
 Special inspections 1705.3, 1705.4.2,
 1705.7, 1705.8, 1705.9
 Steel 1809.11, 1810.3.2.3, 1810.3.5.3
 Timber 1809.12, 1810.3.2.4
 Waterproofing 1805.3

FOUNDATION, DEEP 202, 1810

Drilled shaft 202
 Existing 1810.10.1.2
 Geotechnical investigation 1803.5.5
 Grade beams 1810.3.12
 Helical pile 202, 1810.3.1.5, Table 1810.3.2.6,
 1810.3.3.1.9, 1810.3.5.3.3,
 1810.4.11, 1810.4.12
 Micropile 202, Table 1808.8.1,
 Table 1810.3.2.6, 1810.3.5.2.3,
 1810.3.10, 1810.4.10
 Piles Table 1808.8.1, 1809.12, 1810, 1810.3.1.4

FOUNDATION, SHALLOW 202, 1809

Pier and curtain wall 1809.10
 Slab-on-grade 1808.6.2
 Strip footing 1808.8, 1809

FOYERS

Assembly occupancy 1029.4, 1029.9.5
 Corridors 1020.6
 Covered and open mall building 402.1

FRAME INSPECTION 110.3.4

FRATERNITIES 310.4
FROST PROTECTION 1809.5
FURNACE ROOMS 1006.2.2.1

G

GALLERIES

(see **TECHNICAL PRODUCTION AREAS**)

GARAGE, AUTOMOBILE PARKING

(see **PARKING GARAGES**)

GARAGE, REPAIR 406.8
 Floor surface 406.8.3
 Gas detection system 406.8.5, 908.5
 Sprinkler protection 406.8.6, 903.2.9.1
 Ventilation 406.8.2

GARAGES, TRUCK AND BUS

Live load 1607.7
 Sprinkler protection 903.2.10.1

GARAGES AND CARPORTS, PRIVATE

Area limitations 406.3.1
 Classification 406.3.1
 Parking surfaces 406.3.3, 406.3.5
 Separation 406.3.4, 406.3.5.1

GAS 101.4.1, 105.2, 112
 Gas detection system 406.6.6, 406.8.5, 415.8.7, 415.11.7, 421.6, 908
 Hydrogen cutoff room 421.6
 Motor fuel-dispensing 406.7

GATES 1010.2
 Vehicular 3110

GIFT SHOPS 407.2.4

GIRDERS

Fire resistance Table 601
 Materials Chapter 6
 Wood construction 2304.12.1.1, 2308.4.1

GLASS (see **GLAZING**)

GLASS BLOCK (see **GLASS UNIT MASONRY**)

GLASS UNIT MASONRY 202, 2110
 Atrium enclosure 404.6
 Fire resistance 2110.1.1
 Hazardous locations 2406.1.3

GLAZING

Athletic facilities 2408
 Atrium enclosure 404.6
 Doors 705.8, 709.5, 710.5, 716.4.3.2, 1405.13, 1709.1
 Elevator hoistway and car 2409
 Fire doors 716.5.5.1, 716.5.8
 Fire-resistant walls 716.5.3.2
 Fire windows 703.5, 716.5
 Group I-3 408.7
 Guards 1015.2.1, 2406.4.4, 2407

Handrail 1011.11, 2407
 Identification 2403.1, 2406.3
 Impact loads 2406.1, 2407.1.4.2, 2408.2.1, 2408.3
 Impact resistant 1609.1.2
 Jalousies 2403.5
 Label/identification 716.3.1, 716.3.2, 716.5.7.1, 716.5.8.3, 716.6.8
 Loads 2404
 Louvered windows 2403.5
 Opening protection 716.2
 Replacement 2401.2
 Safety 716.5.8.4, 716.6.3, 2406
 Security 408.7
 Skylights 2405
 Sloped 2404.2, 2405
 Supports 2403.2
 Swimming pools 2406.4
 Testing 1709.5, 2406.1.1, 2408.2.1
 Veneer 1405.12
 Vertical 2404.1
 Walkways 2409.1

GRADE (ADJACENT GROUND ELEVATION) ... 202

GRADE, LUMBER (see **LUMBER)** 202

GRADE PLANE 202

GRAIN ELEVATORS 426.1.5

GRANDSTANDS 303.1, 1029.1.1

Egress 1029.1.1
 Exit sign 1013.1
 Live load Table 1607.1
 Occupant load 1004.4
 Separation 1029.1.1.1

GREENHOUSES 312.1

Area 503, 506, 507, 508
 Deflections Table 1604.3
 Live load 1607.12.2.1
 Membrane structure 3102.1
 Plastic 2606.11
 Sloped glazing 2405
 Wind load 1609.1.2

GRIDIRON (see **TECHNICAL PRODUCTION AREAS)**

GRINDING ROOMS 426.1.2

GROSS LEASABLE AREA (see **COVERED MALL AND OPEN MALL BUILDINGS)** 202, 402.3, 402.8.2

GROUT 714.3.1.1, 714.4.1

GUARDS 1015

Assembly seating 1029.1.1, 1029.16
 Equipment platform 505.3.3
 Exceptions 1015.2
 Glazing 1015.2.1, 2406.4.4, 2407
 Height 1015.3

Loads	1607.8
Mechanical equipment	1015.6
Opening limitations	1015.4
Parking garage	406.4.2
Ramps	1012.9
Residential	1015.3
Roof access	1015.7
Screen porches	1015.5
Stairs	1015.2
Vehicle barrier	406.4.3, 1607.8.3
Windows	1015.8
GUTTERS	1503.4.3
GYMNASIUMS	303.1
Group E	303.1.3
Live load	Table 1607.1
Occupant load	1004.1
GYPSUM	Chapter 25
Aggregate, exposed	2513
Board	202, Chapter 25
Ceiling diaphragms	2508.5
Concrete, reinforced	2514
Construction	2508
Draftstopping	718.3.1
Exterior soffit	Table 2506.2
Fastening	Table 2306.3(3), 2508.1
Fire resistance	719, 722.2.1.4, 722.6.2
Fire-resistant joint treatment	2508.4
Inspection	2503
Lath	2507, 2510
Lathing and furring for cement plaster	719, 2510
Lathing and plastering	2507
Materials	2506
Panel products	202, Chapter 25
Plaster, exterior	2512
Plaster, interior	2511
Shear wall construction	Table 2306.3(3), 2308.9.3, 2505
Sheathing	Table 2308.5.11
Showers and water closets	2509
Stucco	2510
Veneer base	2507.2
Veneer plaster	2507.2
Vertical and horizontal assemblies	2504
Wallboard	Table 2506.2
Water-resistant backing board	2506.2, 2509.2

H

HANDRAILS	1014
Alternating tread devices	1011.14
Assembly aisles	1029.15
Construction	1014.4, 1014.5, 1014.6

Extensions	1014.6
Glazing	2407
Graspability	1014.3
Guards	1015.3
Height	1014.2
Loads	1607.8
Location	1014.1, 1014.7, 1014.8, 1014.9
Ramps	1012.8
Stairs	1011.11
HARDBOARD	202, 1404.3.2, 2303.1.7
HARDWARE (see DOORS and LOCKS AND LATCHES)	
HARDWOOD Fastening	2304.10
Quality	2303.3
Veneer	1404.3.2
HAZARDOUS MATERIALS	307, 414, 415
Control areas	414.2
Explosion control	414.5.1, Table 414.5.1, 415.8, 415.11.5.5, 426.1.4
Special provisions	415.7
Sprinkler protection	Table 414.2.5(1), Table 414.2.5(2), 415.4, 415.11.11, 903.2.5
Ventilation	414.3, 414.5.4, 415.8.11.3, 415.9.1.7, 415.11.1.6, 415.11.1.8.1, 415.11.3.2, 415.11.5.8, 415.11.6.4, 415.11.7, 415.11.10, 1203.6
Weather protection	414.6.1
HAZARDOUS OCCUPANCY (GROUP H), (see HAZARDOUS MATERIALS)	307, 414, 415
Alarm and detection	415.3, 415.5, 415.11.2, 415.11.3.5, 415.11.5.9, 415.11.8, 901.6.3, 907.2.5, 908.1, 908.2
Area	503, 505, 506, 507, 508
Dispensing	414.5, 414.6, 414.7.2, 415.6
Gas detection systems	415.11.7
Group provisions H-1 (detonation)	307.3, 415.6.1.1, 415.6.2 415.7, 415.7.1
H-2 (deflagration)	307.4, 415.8, 415.9
H-3 (physical hazard)	307.5, 415.8, 415.10
H-4 (health hazard)	307.6, 415.10
H-5 (semiconductor)	307.7, 415.11
Height	415.7, 415.8.1, 415.9.1.1, 415.8.1.6, 426.1.1, 503, 504, 505, 508
Incidental uses	509
Interior finishes	416.2.1, 416.3.1, Table 803.11, 804
Live load	Table 1607.1

Location on property 414.6.1.2, 415.6
 Low hazard (See Factory – Group F-2 and
 Storage – Group S-2)
 Means of egress
 Aisles 107.5
 Corridors 415.11.2
 One means of egress Table 1006.2.1,
 Table 1006.3.2
 Panic hardware 1010.1.10
 Stairway, exit access 1019
 Travel distance Table 1017.2, 1016.2.1,
 1006.3.2
 Mixed occupancies 508.3, 508.4
 Accessory 508.2
 Moderate hazard (See Factory – Group F-1 and
 Storage – Group S-1)
 Multiple hazards 307.8
 Occupancy exceptions 307.1
 Plumbing fixtures Chapter 29
 Prohibited locations 419.2
 Risk category Table 1604.5
 Smoke and heat removal 910.2
 Special provisions—General
 Detached buildings 415.6.2, 415.8
 Dry cleaning (see DRY CLEANING PLANTS)
 Equipment platforms 505.3
 Fire district D102.2.2
 Fire separation distance 415.6
 Grain elevators 426.1, 426.1.5
 Grinding rooms 426.1.2
 Separation from other occupancies 415.6.1,
 508.2.4, 508.3.3, 508.4
 Special provisions based on materials
 Combustible liquids Table 307.1(1),
 307.4, 307.5, 414.2.5,
 414.5.3, 415.9.2
 Corrosives 307.6, Table 414.2.5(1), 414.3,
 415.10.3, Table 415.11.1.1.1
 Cryogenic Table 307.1(1), Table 414.5.1,
 Table 415.11.1.1.1
 Explosives 202, 307.3, 307.3.1,
 Table 415.6.2
 Flammable liquids 307.4, 307.5, 415.9.1
 Flammable solids 307.5, 415.11.1.1.1
 Health-hazard materials 202,
 Table 414.2.5(1), 415.6,
 Table 415.11.1.1.1,
 415.11.6.1, 415.11.7.2
 Irritants Table 414.2.5(1),
 Table 415.11.1.1.1
 Liquid, highly toxic and toxic 307.6,
 Table 414.2.5(1), 415.8.3,
 415.9.3, Table 415.11.1.1.1, 908.3

Organic peroxides Table 414.5.1,
 415.6.1, 415.8.4,
 Table 415.11.1.1.1, 418
 Oxidizers, liquid and solid Table 414.2.5(1),
 Table 414.5.1, 415.8.4,
 Table 415.11.1.1.1,
 Pyrophoric materials 307.4, Table 307.1(1),
 Table 414.5.1, 415.7.1,
 415.8.4, Table 415.11.1.1.1
 Sensitizers Table 415.11.1.1.1
 Solids, highly toxic and toxic 307.6,
 Table 414.2.5(1), 415.10.4,
 Table 415.11.1.1.1, 908.3
 Unstable materials 307.3, Table 414.2.5(1),
 Table 414.5.1, 415.5.4,
 Table 415.11.1.1.1
 Water-reactive materials Table 414.5.1,
 415.8.3, 415.8.4, 415.8.5,
 415.11, Table 415.11.1.1.1
 Sprinkler protection 415.2, 415.11.6.4,
 415.11.9, 415.11.10.1,
 415.11.11, 705.8.1, 903.2.5
 Standby, emergency power 2702.2.8,
 2702.2.13, 2702.2.14
 Storage 413, 414.1, 414.2.5,
 414.5, 414.6, 414.7.1,
 415.6, Table 415.6.2,
 415.7.1, 415.9.1, 426.1
 Unlimited area 507.8
HEAD JOINT, MASONRY 202
HEADROOM 406.4.1, 505.1,
 1003.2, 1003.3, 1010.1.1,
 1010.1.1.1, 1011.3, 1012.5.2, 1208.2
HEALTH CARE
 (see INSTITUTIONAL I-1 AND INSTITUTIONAL I-2)
 Ambulatory care facilities 202, 422
 Clinics, outpatient 304.1
 Hospitals 308.4
HEALTH-HAZARD MATERIALS 307.2,
 Table 414.2.5(1), 415.2,
 415.11.1.1.1, Table 415.11.6.1
HEAT VENTS 910
HEATING (see MECHANICAL) 101.4.2
 Aircraft hangars 412.4.4
 Fire pump rooms 913.3
 Fireplace 2111
 Masonry heaters 2112
 Parking garages 406.4.7
 Repair garages 406.8.4
HEIGHT, BUILDING 503, 504, 505, 508, 510
 Limitations 503
 Mixed construction types 510
 Modifications 504
 Roof structures 504.3

HELIPORT

- Definition 202
- Live loads 1607.6

HIGH-PILED COMBUSTIBLE STORAGE 413,
907.2.15, 910.2.2

HIGH-RISE BUILDINGS 403

- Alarms and detection 403.4.1, 403.4.2, 907.2.13
- Application 403.1
- Construction 403.2
- Elevators 403.6, 1009.2.1, 3007, 3008
- Emergency power 403.4.8, 2702.2.9
- Emergency systems 403.4
- Fire command station 403.4.6
- Fire department communication 403.4.3, 403.4.4
- Fire service elevators 403.6.1, 3007
- Occupant evacuation elevators 403.6.2, 3008
- Smoke removal 403.4.6
- Smokeproof enclosure 403.5.4, 1023.11
- Sprayed fire-resistant materials (SFRM) 403.2.4
- Sprinkler protection 403.3, 903.2.11.3
- Stairways 403.5
- Standby power 403.4.7, 2702.2.2, 2702.2.9
- Structural integrity 403.2.3, 1615
- Super high-rise (over 420 feet) 403.2.1, 403.2.3,
403.2.4, 403.3.1,
403.5.2
- Voice alarm 403.4.3, 907.2.13
- Zones 907.6.3, 907.6.4

HISTORIC BUILDINGS 101.4.8

- Flood provisions G105.3

HORIZONTAL ASSEMBLY 711

- Continuity 508.2.5.1, 711.2.2,
711.2.3, 713.11, 713.12
- Fire-resistance rating 603.1(1), 603.1(22),
603.1(23), 703, 704.4.2,
707.3.10, 711.2.4
- Glazing, rated 716.6
- Group I-1 420.3
- Group R 420.3
- Incidental 509.4
- Insulation 720, 807, 808
- Joints 715, 2508.4
- Non-fire-resistance rating 711.3
- Opening protection 712.1.13.1, 714.4, 716, 717.6
- Shaft enclosure 713.1
- Special provisions
 - Aircraft hangars 412.4.4
 - Atrium 404.3, 404.6
 - Covered and open mall buildings 402.4.2.3,
402.8.7
 - Fire pumps 913.2.1
 - Flammable finishes 416.2

- Group H-2 415.9.1.1, 415.9.1.2
- Groups H-3 and H-4 415.10.2
- Group H-5 415.11.1.2, 415.11.5.1
- Group I-2 407.5.3
- Groups I-1, R-1, R-2 and R-3 420.3
- Hazardous materials 414.2
- High-rise 403.2.1, 403.3, 403.4.7.1
- Hydrogen fuel gas 421.4
- Organic coating 418.4, 418.5, 418.6
- Stages and platforms 410.4, 410.5.1

HORIZONTAL EXIT 1026

- Accessible means of egress 1009.2, 1009.2.1,
1009.3, 1009.4,
1009.6, 1009.6.2
- Doors 1026.3
- Exit discharge 1028.1
- Fire resistance 1026.2
- Institutional I-2 occupancy 407.4, 1026.1
- Institutional I-3 occupancy 408.2, 1026.1
- Refuge area (see REFUGE AREAS)

HORIZONTAL FIRE SEPARATION
(see HORIZONTAL ASSEMBLY)

HOSE CONNECTIONS
(see STANDPIPES, REQUIRED)

HOSPITAL
(see INSTITUTIONAL GROUP I-2) 308.4, 407

HOSPITALS [OSHPD 1] 1224

- Application 1224.2
- Definitions 1224.3
- General construction 1224.4
- Reserved 1224.5 – 1224.13
- Scope 1224.1

HOSPITALS – BASIC SERVICES

- Anesthesia service space 1224.16
- Clinical laboratory service space 1224.17
- Dietetic service space 1224.20
- Nursing service space 1224.14
- Pharmaceutical service space 1224.19
- Radiological/imaging service space 1224.18
- Surgical service space 1224.15

SUPPORT SERVICES

- Administrative space 1224.21
- Central sterile supply 1224.22
- Employee dressing rooms and lockers 1224.25
- Housekeeping rooms 1224.26
- Laundry 1224.27
- Morgue and autopsy facilities 1224.24
- Storage 1224.23

HOSPITALS – SUPPLEMENTAL SERVICES

- Emergency service 1224.33
- Intensive care units 1224.29
- Intermediate-care service space 1224.38

<i>Nuclear medicine</i>	1224.34
<i>Obstetrical facilities (perinatal unit space)</i> . . .	1224.32
<i>Outpatient service space</i>	1224.39
<i>Pediatric and adolescent unit</i>	1224.30
<i>Psychiatric nursing unit</i>	1224.31
<i>Rehabilitation therapy department</i>	1224.35
<i>Renal dialysis service space</i> <i>(acute and chronic)</i>	1224.36
<i>Respiratory therapy service space</i>	1224.37
<i>Skilled nursing service space</i>	1224.40
<i>Social service space</i>	1224.41
<i>Supplemental surgery services</i>	1224.28
HOTEL (or MOTEL) (definition)	202
HURRICANE-PRONE REGIONS <i>(see WIND LOADS)</i>	202
HURRICANE SHELTER (see STORM SHELTER)	
HURRICANE SHUTTERS	1609.1.2
HYDROGEN FUEL GAS ROOMS	421, Table 509

I

ICE-SENSITIVE STRUCTURE

Atmospheric ice loads	1614.1
Definition	202

IDENTIFICATION, REQUIREMENTS FOR

Fire barriers	703.6
Fire partitions	703.6
Fire wall	703.6
Glazing	2403.1, 2406.3
Inspection certificate	1702.1
Labeling	1703.5
Preservative-treated wood	2303.1.9.1
Smoke barrier	703.6
Smoke partition	703.6
Steel	2203.1

IMPACT LOAD 202, 1603.1.1, 1607.9

INCIDENTAL USES

Area	509.3
Occupancy classification	509.2
Separation and protection	509.4

INCINERATOR ROOMS Table 509, 1006.2.2.2

INDUSTRIAL (see FACTORY OCCUPANCY)

INSPECTIONS	110, 1704, 1705
Alternative methods and materials	1705.1.1
Approval required	110.6
Concrete construction	110.3.1, 110.3.2, 110.3.9, 1705.3
Concrete slab	110.3.2
EIFS	110.3.9, 1705.16
Energy efficiency	110.3.7
Fabricators	1704.2.5
Fees	109

Final	110.3.10
Fire-extinguishing systems	904.4
Fire-resistant materials	110.3.9, 1705.14, 1705.15
Fire-resistant penetrations	110.3.6, 1705.17
Footing or foundation	110.3.1, 110.3.9, 1705.3, 1705.4, 1705.7, 1705.8, 1705.9
Flood hazard	110.3.3, 110.3.10.1
Frame	110.3.4
Lath or gypsum board	110.3.5, 2503
Liability	104.8
Masonry	110.3.9, 1705.4
Preliminary	110.2
Required	110.3
Right of entry	104.6
Seismic	1705.12
Smoke control	104.16, 909.18.8, 1705.18
Soils	110.3.9, 1705.6
Special (see SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS)	110.3.9, 1704, 1705
Sprayed fire-resistant materials	1705.14
Sprinkler protection	903.5
Steel	110.3.4, 110.3.9, 1705.2
Third party	110.4
Welding	110.3.9, 1705.2, 2204.1
Wind	110.3.9, 1705.10
Wood	110.3.9, 1705.5

INSTITUTIONAL I-1

[see INSTITUTIONAL OCCUPANCY (GROUP I) and RESIDENTIAL (GROUP R-4)]	308.3, 420
Alarm and detection	420.6, 907.2.6.1, 907.2.10, 907.2.11.2, 907.5.2.3.2

Combustible decorations	806.1
Emergency escape and rescue	1030
Means of egress	
Aisles	1018.5
Corridors	1020.1
Stairway, exit access	1019
Travel distance	1017.2, 1006.3.2
Occupancy exceptions	308.3.1 through 308.3.4
Separation, unit	420.2, 420.3
Sprinkler protection	420.4, 903.2.6, 903.3.2

INSTITUTIONAL I-2

[see INSTITUTIONAL OCCUPANCY (GROUP I)]	308.4, 407
Alarms and detection	407.7, 407.8, 907.2.6.2
Care suites	407.4.4
Combustible decorations	806.1
Electrical systems	407.10, 2702.1.7, 2702.2.6
Hyperbaric facilities	425
Means of egress	407.4

Aisles	1018.5	Child care	303.1.3, 308.6.4, 308.11, 310.1
Corridors	407.2, 407.3, 407.4, 1020.2	Group specific provisions	
Doors	407.3.1, 1010.1.9.6, 1010.1.9.8	Group I-1 (see INSTITUTIONAL I-1)	308.2
Exterior exit stairway	1027.2	Group I-2 (see INSTITUTIONAL I-2)	308.3, 407
Hardware	1010.1.9.3, 1010.1.9.6	Group I-3 (see INSTITUTIONAL I-3)	308.4, 408
Stairway, exit access	1019.3	Group I-4 (see INSTITUTIONAL I-4)	308.1, 310.5.1
Travel distance	407.4	Height	503, 504, 505, 508
Occupancy exceptions	308.4.1 through 308.4.4	Incidental uses	509
Separation	410	Interior finishes	Table 803.11, 804
Smoke barriers	407.5	Live load	Table 1607.1
Smoke compartment	407.2.1, 407.2.3, 407.5	Means of egress	
Smoke partitions	407.3	Corridors	1020.2
Sprinkler protection	407.6, 903.2.6, 903.3.2	Stairway, exit access	1019
Yards	407.9	Travel distance	407, 1006.3.2, 1016.2.1, 1017.2,
INSTITUTIONAL I-3		Mixed occupancies	508.3, 508.4
[see INSTITUTIONAL OCCUPANCY (GROUP I)]	308.5, 408	Occupancy exceptions	303.1.1, 303.1.2, 308.3.3, 308.3.4, 308.4.2, 308.6.1 through 308.6.4, 310.5.1
Alarm and detection	408.10, 907.2.6.3	Plumbing fixtures	2902
Combustible decorations	806.1	Risk category	Table 1604.5
Means of egress	408.2, 408.3, 408.4	Standby, emergency power	2702.2
Aisles	1018.5	INSULATION	
Doors	408.4, 1010.1.1, 1010.1.2	Concealed	720.2
Exit discharge	408.3.6	Duct insulation	720.1
Exit sign exemption	1013.1	Exposed	720.3
Hardware	408.4, 1010.1.9.3, 1010.1.9.7, 1010.1.9.8	Fiberboard	720.1, 1508.1.1, 2303.1.6.2, 2303.1.6.3
Stairway, exit access	1019.3	Foam plastic (see FOAM PLASTICS)	720.1
Travel distance	408.6.1, 408.8.1, 1017.2, 1006.3.2	Loose fill	720.4, 720.6
Security glazing	408.7	Pipe insulation	720.1, 720.7
Separation	408.5, 408.8	Reflective plastic core	2614
Smoke barrier	408.6	Roof	720.5, 1508
Smoke compartment	408.4.1, 408.6, 408.9	Sound	720, 807, 1207
Sprinkler protection	408.11, 903.2.6	Thermal	720, 807, 1508
Standby/emergency power	2702.2.7	INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT	
INSTITUTIONAL I-4		Lighting	1205
[see INSTITUTIONAL OCCUPANCY (GROUP I)]	308.6	Rodentproofing	415.11.1.6, Appendix F
Alarms and detection	907.2.6	Sound transmission	1207
Corridor rating	1020.1	Space dimensions	1208
Educational	303.1.3, 305.1	Temperature control	1204
Means of egress		Ventilation	409.3, 414.3, 415.9.1.7, 1203.5
Day care	1006.2.2.4	Yards or courts	1206.2, 1206.3
Stairway, exit access	1019	INTERIOR FINISHES	Chapter 8
Travel distance	1016.2.1, 1017.2, 1006.3.2	Acoustical ceiling systems	807, 808
Occupancy exceptions	308.6.1, 308.6.2, 308.6.3, 308.6.4	Application	803.12, 804.4
Sprinkler protection	903.2.6	Atriums	404.8
INSTITUTIONAL OCCUPANCY (GROUP I)	308	Children's play structures	424
Accessory	508.2	Covered and open mall buildings	402.6
Adult care	308.6	Decorative materials	801.1.2, 806
Area	503, 505, 506, 507, 508	Floor finish	804, 805

Foam plastic insulation 2603.3, 2603.4
 Foam plastic trim 806.5, 2604.2
 Insulation 807
 Light-transmitting plastics 2606
 Signs 402.6.4, 2611
 Trim 806.7, 806.8
 Wall and ceiling finishes 803
 Wet location 1210
INTERPRETATION, CODE 104.1

J

JAILS (see INSTITUTIONAL I-3) 308.5, 408
JOINT
 Gypsum board 2508.4
 Lumber sheathing 2308.7.11
 Shotcrete 1908.7
 Waterproofing 1805.3.3
JOINTS, FIRE-RESISTANT SYSTEMS 715
 Special inspection 1705.17

K

KIOSKS 402.6.2
KITCHENS 303.3, 306.2
 Accessibility 1133A
 Dimensions 1208
 Means of egress 1016.2
 Occupant load Table 1004.1.1
 Sinks 2902.1

L

LABORATORIES
 Classification of 304.1
 Hazardous materials 414, 415
 Incidental uses Table 509
LADDERS
 Boiler, incinerator and furnace rooms 1006.2.2.1
 Construction 1011.15, 1011.16,
 1014.2, 1014.6, 1015.3, 1015.4
 Emergency escape window wells 1030.5.2
 Group I-3 408.3.5, 1011.15, 1011.16
 Heliport 412.8.3
 Refrigeration machinery room 1006.2.2.2
 Ships ladders 1011.14
 Stage 410.6.3.4
**LAMINATED TIMBER,
 STRUCTURAL GLUED** 602.4, 2303.1,
 2303.1.3, 2304.12.2.4,
 2306.1, 2308.4.3, 2308.7.9
LANDINGS
 Doors 1010.1.6

Ramp 1012.6
 Stair 1011.6
LATH, METAL OR WIRE Table 2507.2
LAUNDRIES 304.1, 306.2, Table 509
LAUNDRY CHUTE 713.13, 903.2.11.2
LEGAL
 Federal and state authority 102.2
 Liability 104.8
 Notice of violation 114.2, 116.3
 Registered design professional 107.1, 107.3.4
 Right of entry 104.6
 Unsafe buildings or systems 116
 Violation penalties 114.4
LIBRARIES
 Classification, other than school 303.1.3, 303.4
 Classification, school 303.1.3, 305.1
 Live load Table 1607.1
LIGHT, REQUIRED 1205
 Artificial 1205.3
 Emergency (see EMERGENCY LIGHTING)
 Means of egress 1008.2
 Natural 1205.2
 Stairways 1205.4
 Yards and courts 1206
LIGHT-FRAME CONSTRUCTION
 Definition 202
 Cold-formed steel 2211
 Conventional (wood) 2308
LIGHTS, PLASTIC CEILING DIFFUSERS 2606.7
LINEN CHUTE 713.13, 903.2.11.2
LINTEL
 Adobe 2109.3.4.9
 Fire resistance 704.11
 Masonry, wood support 2304.13
LIQUEFIED PETROLEUM GAS Table 414.5.1,
 415.9.2
LISTED (definition) 202
LISTING AGENCY (definition) 202
LIVE LOADS 202, 1607
 Construction documents 107.2, 1603.1.1
 Posting of 106.1
LIVE/WORK UNITS 202, 310.4, 419
 Separation 508.1
LOAD AND RESISTANCE
 FACTOR DESIGN (LRFD) 1602.1
 Factored load 202
 Limit state 202
 Load combinations 1605.2
 Load factor 202
 Resistance factor 202
 Wood design 2301.2, 2307

LOAD COMBINATIONS	1605
Allowable stress design	1605.3
Load and resistance factor design	1605.2
Strength design	1605.2
LOADS	106, 202
Atmospheric ice	1614
Combinations	1605
Dead	202, 1606
Factored load	202, 1604.2
Flood	1603.1.7, 1612
Impact	202, 1607.9
Live	419.6, 1603.1.1, 1607
Load effects	202
Nominal load	202, 1604.2
Rain	1611
Seismic	1603.1.5, 1613
Snow	1603.1.3, 1608
Soil lateral	1610
Wind	1603.1.4, 1609
LOBBIES	
Assembly occupancy	1029.4
Elevator	405.4.3, 1009.2.1, 1009.4, 3006, 3007.6, 3008.6
Exit discharge	1028.1
Underground buildings	405.4.3
LOCAL ENFORCING AGENCY	1.8.3
LOCKS AND LATCHES	1010.1.9, 1010.1.10
Access-controlled egress	1010.1.9.8
Delayed egress locks	1010.1.9.7
Electromagnetically locked	1010.1.9.9
Group I-2	407.4.1.1, 1010.1.9.6
Group I-3	408.4, 1010.1.9.10
Group R-4	1010.1.9.5.1
High-rise	403.5.3
Toilet rooms	2902.3.5
LODGING HOUSE (definition)	202
LUMBER	
General provisions	Chapter 23
Quality standards	2303

M

MAINTENANCE	
Means of egress	1001.3, 3310.2
Property	101.4.4
MALL	
(see COVERED AND OPEN MALL BUILDINGS)	
MANUAL FIRE ALARM BOX	907.4.2
MANUFACTURED HOMES	
Flood resistant	G501
MARQUEES	202, 3106, H113
Drainage, water	3201.4

Construction	3106.5
Live load	Table 1607.1, 1607.12
Prohibited location	3106.4
Roof construction	3106.3
MASONRY	Chapter 21, <i>Chapter 21A</i>
Adhered veneer	1405.10
Adobe	2109.3
Anchorage	1604.8.2
Anchored veneer	1405.6
Architectural cast stone	2103.1
Ashlar stone	202
Autoclaved aerated concrete (AAC)	202
Calculated fire resistance	722.4
Chimneys	2113
Construction	2104, 2109.2.2
Corbelled	2104.1.2
Dampproofing	1805.2.2
Design, methods	2101.2, 2107, 2108, 2109
Fire resistance, calculated	722.3.2, 722.3.4
Fireplaces	2111
Floor anchorage	1604.8.2
Foundation walls	1807.1.5
Foundations, adobe	2109.3.4.5
Glass unit	2110
Grouted	202
Headers (see BONDING, MASONRY)	2109.2
Heaters	2112
Inspection, special	1705.4
Joint reinforcement	2103.4
Materials	2103
Penetrations	714
Quality assurance	2105
Rodentproofing	Appendix F
Roof anchorage	1604.8.1
Rubble stone	202
Seismic provisions	2106
Serviceability	1604.3.4
Stone	2109.2
Support	2304.13
Surface bonding	2103.2.2
Veneer	1405.6, 1405.10, 2101.2.1, 2308.6.10
Wall, composite	202
Wall, hollow	202
Wall anchorage	1604.8.2
Waterproofing	1805.3.2
Wythe	202
MATERIALS	
Alternates	104.11
Aluminum	Chapter 20
Concrete	Chapter 19, <i>Chapter 19A</i>

Glass and glazing Chapter 24
 Gypsum Chapter 25
 Masonry Chapter 21, *Chapter 21A*
 Noncombustible 703.4
 Plastic Chapter 26
 Steel Chapter 22, *Chapter 22A*
 Testing (see TESTING) 1707
 Wood Chapter 23
MEANS OF EGRESS Chapter 10
 Accessible 1009, 2702.2.2
 Aircraft related 412.3.2, 412.3.3,
 412.3.4, 412.5.2, 412.7.1
 Alternating tread device 412.7.3, 505.3,
 1006.2.2.1, 1006.2.2.2,
 1011.14,
 Ambulatory care facilities 422.3.1, 422.3.3
 Assembly 1009.1, 1029
 Atrium 404.9, 404.10, 707.3.6
 Capacity 1005.3
 Ceiling height 1003.2
 Child care facilities (see Day care facilities)
 Construction drawings 107.2.3
 Configuration 1007
 Convergence 1005.6
 Covered and open mall buildings 402.8
 Day care facilities 308.6, 310.5.1,
 Table 1004.1.1, 1006.2.2.4
 Distribution 1005.5
 Doors 1005.7, 1006.2, 1010,
 1022.2, 2702.2.10
 During construction 3303.3, 3310
 Elevation change 1003.5
 Elevators 403.5.2, 403.6.1, 1003.7, 1009, 3008
 Emergency escape and rescue 1030
 Encroachment 1005.7
 Equipment platform 505.3
 Escalators 1003.7
 Existing buildings 1009.1, 3310
 Exit (see EXIT) 1022 through 1027
 Exit access
 (see EXIT ACCESS) 1016 through 1021
 Exit discharge (see EXIT DISCHARGE) 1028
 Exit enclosures 1023.2
 Exit passageway
 (see EXIT PASSAGWAY) 1024
 Exit signs 1013, 2702.2.5,
 Fire escapes 412.8.3
 Floor surface 804, 1003.4
 Gates 1010.2
 Group I-2 407.2, 407.3, 407.4, 1019.3
 Group I-3 408.2, 408.3, 408.4,
 408.6, 408.8, 1019.3

Guards 1015
 Handrails 1014
 Hazardous materials 414.6.1.2,
 415.11.2, 415.11.5.6
 Headroom 1003.2, 1003.3
 Heliports 412.8.3
 High-hazard Group H 415.11.2
 High-rise 403.5, 403.6
 Illumination 1008, 2702.2.4
 Interior finish 803.11, 804
 Ladders (see LADDERS)
 Live loads Table 1607.1
 Live/work units 419.3
 Mezzanines 505.2.2, 505.2.3,
 1004.1.1.2, 1009.1
 Moving walk 1003.7
 Number 1006
 Occupant load 1004.1, 1004.1.2, 1004.2
 Parking 406.5.7
 Protruding objects 1003.3, 1005.7
 Ramps 1012, 1027
 Scoping 101.3, 105.2.2, 108.2, 1001.1
 Seating, fixed 1009.1, 1029
 Special amusement 411.7
 Stages 410.3.3, 410.6
 Stairways 403.5, 404.6, 1005.3.1,
 1011, 1023.2, 1027
 Temporary structures 3103.4
 Travel distance
 (see TRAVEL DISTANCE) 1016.2.1, 1017
 Turnstile 1010.3
 Underground buildings 405.5.1, 405.7
 Width 1005.1, 1005.2, 1005.4,
 1011.2, 1012.5.1, 1020.2, 1029.6, 1029.8
**MECHANICAL (see AIR CONDITIONING,
 HEATING, REFRIGERATION, AND
 VENTILATION)** 101.4.2
 Access 1011.12, 1209.3
 Air transfer openings 705.10, 706.11,
 707.10, 708.9, 709.8,
 711.7, 713.10, 714.1.1, 717
 Chimneys (see CHIMNEYS)
 Code Chapter 28
 Disconnected 3303.6
 Ducts 704.8, 705.10, 706.11,
 707.10, 712.1.6, 712.1.10.3,
 713.10, 708.9, 709.8, 710.8,
 711.7, 714.1.1, 717
 Encroachment, public right-of-way 3202.3.2
 Equipment on roof 1510, 1511.2
 Equipment platforms 505.3
 Factory-built fireplace 2111.14.1
 Fireplaces 2111

Incidental use room Table 509
 Motion picture projection room 409.3
 Permit required 105.1, 105.2
 Roof access 1011.12
 Seismic inspection and testing 1705.12.6,
 1705.13.2
 Smoke control systems 909
 Systems 202, Chapter 28
MECHANICALLY
LAMINATED DECKING 2304.9.3
MEMBRANE ROOF COVERINGS 1507.11,
 1507.12, 1507.13
MEMBRANE STRUCTURES 2702.2.12, 3102
MENTAL HOSPITALS (see INSTITUTIONAL I-2)
MERCANTILE OCCUPANCY (GROUP M) 309
 Alarm and detection 907.2.7
 Area 503, 505, 506, 507, 508
 Covered and open mall buildings 402
 Hazardous material display and storage 414.2.5
 Height 503, 504, 505, 508
 Incidental uses 509
 Interior finishes Table 803.11, 804
 Live load Table 1607.1
 Means of egress
 Aisles 1018.3, 1018.4
 Stairway, exit access 1019
 Travel distance 402.8, 1016.2.1,
 1017.2, 1006.3.2
 Mixed occupancies 508.3, 508.4
 Accessory 508.2
 Live/work units 419
 Mall buildings 402
 Parking below/above 510.7, 510.8, 510.9
 Special mixed 510.2
 Occupancy exceptions 307.1.1
 Plumbing fixtures 2902
 Sprinkler protection 903.2.7
 Standpipes 905.3.3
 Unlimited area 507.5, 507.4, 507.13
METAL
 Aluminum Chapter 20
 Roof coverings 1504.3.2, 1507.5
 Steel Chapter 22
 Veneer 1405.11
MEZZANINES 505
 Area limitations 505.2.1, 505.3.1
 Egress 505.2.2, 505.2.3, 1004.6, 1009.1
 Equipment platforms 505.3
 Guards 505.3.3, 1015.1
 Height 505.2, 1003.2
 Occupant load 1004.1.1.2
 Stairways 712.1.11, 1011.14, 1023.2

MIRRORS 1010.1, 2406.1
MIXED OCCUPANCY
 (see **OCCUPANCY SEPARATION**)
MODIFICATIONS 104.4, 104.10
MOISTURE PROTECTION 1210, 1403.2, 1503
MONASTERIES 310.4
MORTAR 202
 Ceramic tile 2103.2.3
 Dampproofing 1805.2.2
 Fire resistance 714.3.1, 714.4.1
 Glass unit masonry 2110.1.1
 Masonry 2103.2
 Rodentproofing Appendix F
MOTELS 310.3, 310.4
MOTION PICTURE PROJECTION ROOMS 409
 Construction 409.2
 Exhaust air 409.3.2, 409.3.3
 Lighting control 409.4
 Projection room 409.3
 Supply air 409.3.1
 Ventilation 409.3
MOTOR FUEL-DISPENSING SYSTEM 406.5
MOTOR VEHICLE FACILITIES 304, 311, 406.7
MOVING, BUILDINGS 101.4.8, D103.3
MOVING WALKS 3004.2
 Means of egress 1003.7

N

NAILING 202, 2303.6, 2304, 2304.10
NONCOMBUSTIBLE
BUILDING MATERIAL 703.4
NURSES STATIONS
 (See **CARE PROVIDER STATIONS**)
NURSING HOMES
 (see **INSTITUTIONAL, GROUP I-2**) 308.4, 407

O

OCCUPANCY
 Accessory 508.2
 Certificates (see **CERTIFICATE OF OCCUPANCY**)
 Change (see **CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY**)
 Floor loads Table 1607.1
 Special Chapter 4
OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION 302
 Covered and open mall buildings 402
 HPM 415.11
 Mixed 508, 510
 Special Chapter 4
OCCUPANCY SEPARATION
 Accessory 508.2

Aircraft related 412.5.1
 Covered mall and open mall building. 402.4.2
 Mixed occupancy 508, 510, 707.3.9
 Private parking garages. 406.3.4, Table 508.4
 Repair garages 406.8.1
 Required fire resistance. Table 508.4, 510

OCCUPANT

EVACUATION ELEVATORS 403.5.2,
 403.6.2, 3008

OCCUPANT LOAD

Actual. 1004.1.2
 Certificate of occupancy 111
 Covered and open mall building 402.8.2
 Cumulative. 1004.1.1
 Determination of 1004.1, 1004.1.1, 1004.6
 Increased. 1004.2
 Outdoors 1004.5
 Seating, fixed. 1004.4
 Signs 1004.3

OFFICE BUILDINGS

(See **GROUP B OCCUPANCIES**)

Classification 304
 Live loads. Table 1607.1, 1607.5

OPEN MALL BUILDINGS

(see **COVERED AND OPEN MALL BUILDINGS**)

OPENING PROTECTION,

EXTERIOR WALLS. 705.8

OPENING PROTECTION, FLOORS

(see **VERTICAL OPENING PROTECTION**)

OPENING PROTECTIVES 705.8, 706.8,
 707.6, 708.6, 709.5,
 712.1.13.1, 713.7, 716

Automatic-closing devices 909.5.3

Fire door and shutter assemblies 705.8.2,
 712.1.13.1, 716.5

Fire windows 716.6

Glass unit masonry
 (see **GLASS UNIT MASONRY**) 2110.1.1

Glazing. 716.6

ORGANIC COATINGS 418

ORGANIC PEROXIDES 307.4, 307.5

OXIDIZERS, LIQUID AND SOLID 307.3,
 307.4, 307.5

P

PANIC HARDWARE. 1010.1.10

PARAPET, EXTERIOR WALL. 705.11, 2109.3.4.3

Construction. 705.11.1

Fire wall 706.6

Height 705.11.1

PARKING, ACCESSIBLE 1109A

PARKING GARAGES 406.4, 406.5, 406.6

Barriers, vehicle 202, 406.4.3, 1607.8.3

Classification 311, 406.3, 406.4

Construction type 406.5.1, Table 601

Enclosed

(see **PARKING GARAGE, ENCLOSED**) 406.6

Gates 3110

Guards 406.4.2, 2407.1.3

Height, clear. 406.4.1

Live loads. Table 1607.1, 1607.10.1.3

Means of egress. 1006.3.1, 1006.2.2.5, 1019

Occupancy separation 508, 510

Open (see **PARKING GARAGE, OPEN**) 406.5

Special provisions 510

Sprinkler protection 903.2.10

Underground 405

Vertical openings 712.1.10

PARKING GARAGES, ENCLOSED. 406.6

Area and height [see **STORAGE**

OCCUPANCY (GROUP S)] 406.6.1

Means of egress. 1003.2, 1006.3.2, 1012.1

Ventilation 406.6.2

PARKING GARAGES, OPEN 202, 406.5

Area and height [see **STORAGE**

OCCUPANCY (GROUP S)] 406.5,
 406.5.1, Table 406.5.4

Construction type 406.5.1

Means of egress. 406.5.7, 1003.2,
 Table 1006.2.1, 1006.3,
 1009.3, 1009.4, 1012.1,
 1017.3, 1019, 1020.1, 1028.1

Mixed occupancy 406.5.3

Standpipes 406.5.8

Ventilation 406.5.10

PARTICLEBOARD 202

Draftstopping 718.3.1

Moisture protection. 1403.2, 1405.2

Quality 2303.1.8

Veneer 1405.5

Wall bracing 2308.6.3

PARTITIONS

Fabric partition 202, 1607.14.1

Fire (see **FIRE PARTITION**)

Live loads. 1607.5, 1607.14

Materials. 602.4.6, 603.1(1), 603.1(11)

Occupancy, specific. 708.1

Smoke (see **SMOKE PARTITION**)

Toilets. 1210

PARTY WALLS

(see **FIRE WALLS**) 706.1.1, Table 716.6

PASSAGEWAY, EXIT (see EXIT) 1024.1

PASSENGER STATIONS. 303.4

PATIO COVERS 2606.10, Appendix I

PEDESTRIAN

- Protection at construction site 3303.2, 3306
- Walkways and tunnels 3104, 3202.3.4

PENALTIES 114.4

PENETRATION-FIRESTOP SYSTEM

- Fire-rated walls 714.3.2
- Fire-rated horizontal assemblies 714.4.2

PENETRATIONS 714, 717

- Fire-resistant assemblies
 - Exterior wall 705.10
 - Fire barrier 707.7, 707.10
 - Fire partition 708.7, 708.9
 - Fire wall 706.9, 706.11
 - Horizontal assemblies 714.4
 - Shaft enclosures 712.1, 713.1, 713.8, 713.10
 - Smoke barriers 709.6, 709.8, 714.4.4
 - Smoke partitions 710.6, 710.7
 - Special inspection 1705.17
 - Walls 714.3
- Nonfire-resistant assemblies 714.5

PERFORMANCE CATEGORY

- Definition 202
- Wood structural panels 2302.1.5

PERLITE Table 721.1(1), Table 2507.2

PERMITS 105

- Application for 104.2, 105.1, 105.3
- Drawings and specifications 107.2.1
- Expiration 105.5
- Fees 109
- Liability for issuing 104.8
- Placement of permit 105.7
- Plan review 104.2, 107.3
- Suspension or revocation 105.6
- Time limitations 105.3.2, 105.5

PHOTOVOLTAIC PANEL SYSTEMS 202

- Fire classification 1505.8, 1505.9
- Panels/modules 1512
- Photovoltaic module 202
- Photovoltaic panel 202
- Roof live loads 1607.12.5
- Rooftop mounted 1510.7

PIER FOUNDATIONS

(see **FOUNDATION, SHALLOW**)

PILE FOUNDATIONS (see FOUNDATION, DEEP)

PIPES

- Embedded in fire protection 704.8
- Insulation covering 720.1, 720.7
- Penetration protection 714, 1023.5
- Under platform 410.4

PLAIN CONCRETE (see CONCRETE) 1906

PLAN REVIEW 107.3

PLASTER

- Fire-resistance requirements 719
- Gypsum 719.1, 719.2
- Inspection 110.3.5
- Portland cement 719.5, Table 2507.2, Table 2511.1.1

PLASTIC Chapter 26

- Approval for use 2606.2
- Composites 2612
- Core insulation, reflective plastic 2614
- Decking 1410, 2612
- Fiber-reinforced polymer 2613
- Finish and trim, interior 2604
- Light-transmitting panels 2401.1, 2607
- Roof panels 2609
- Signs 402.6.4, 2611, D102.2.10, H107.1.1
- Thermal barrier 2603.4
- Veneer 1404.8, 2605, D102.2.11
- Walls, exterior 2603.4.1.4, 2603.5

PLASTIC, FOAM

- Children's play structures 424.2
- Insulation (see **FOAM PLASTICS**) 2603
- Interior finish 803.4, 2603.9
- Malls 402.6.2, 402.6.4.5
- Stages and platforms 410.3.6

PLASTIC, LIGHT-TRANSMITTING

- Awnings and patio covers 2606.10
- Bathroom accessories 2606.9
- Exterior wall panels 2607
- Fiber-reinforced polymer 2613.4
- Fiberglass-reinforced polymer 2613.4
- Glazing 2608
- Greenhouses 2606.11
- Light-diffusing systems 2606.7
- Roof panels 2609
- Signs, interior 2611
- Skylight 2610
- Solar collectors 2606.12
- Structural requirements 2606.5
- Unprotected openings 2608.1, 2608.2
- Veneer, exterior 603.1(15), 603.1(17), 2605
- Wall panels 2607

PLATFORM

- (see **STAGES AND PLATFORMS**) 410
- Construction 410.4
- Temporary 410.4.1

PLATFORM, EQUIPMENT

(see **EQUIPMENT PLATFORM**)

PLATFORM LIFTS, WHEELCHAIR

- Accessibility 1124A
- Accessible means of egress 1009.2, 1009.5, 2702.2.2

PLUMBING

- (see **TOILET AND TOILET ROOMS**) 101.4.3, 105.2, Chapter 29
- Aircraft hangars, residential 412.5.4
- Facilities, minimum 2902, 3305.1
- Fixtures Table 2902.1
- Room requirements 1210, 2606.9

PLYWOOD

- (see **WOOD STRUCTURAL PANELS**) 202
- Preservative-treated 2303.1.9.1

PRESCRIPTIVE FIRE RESISTANCE 721

PRESERVATIVE-TREATED WOOD 202

- Fastenings 2304.10.5
- Quality 2303.1.9
- Required 1403.6, 2304.12
- Shakes, roof covering 1507.9.6, 1507.9.8

PROJECTION ROOMS

- Motion picture 409

PROJECTIONS, COMBUSTIBLE 705.2.3, 1406.3

PROPERTY LINE

- (see **FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE**) 705.3

PROPERTY MAINTENANCE 101.4.4

PROSCENIUM

- Opening protection 410.3.5
- Wall 410.3.4

PSYCHIATRIC HOSPITALS

- (see **INSTITUTIONAL I-2**) 308.4

PUBLIC ADDRESS SYSTEM

- (see **EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS**)

- Covered and open mall buildings 402.7, 907.2.20, 2702.2.4

- Special amusement buildings 411.6

PUBLIC PROPERTY Chapter 32, Chapter 33

PUBLIC RIGHT-OF-WAY

- Encroachments Chapter 32

PYROPHORIC MATERIALS Table 307.1(1), 307.4

R

RAILING (see GUARDS AND HANDRAILS)

RAMPS 1012

- Assembly occupancy 1029.13
- Construction 1012.2 through 1012.5.3, 1012.7, 1012.10
- Exit 1023
- Exit access 1019
- Exterior 1027
- Guards 1012.9, 1015, 1607.8
- Handrails 1012.8, 1014, 1607.8

- Interior 1012.2
- Landings 1012.6
- Parking garage 406.4.4
- Slope 1012.2

RECREATIONAL FACILITIES

- Children's play structure 402.6.3, 424
- Special amusement buildings
(see **AMUSEMENT BUILDINGS, SPECIAL**)

REFERENCED STANDARDS Chapter 35

- Applicability 102.3, 102.4
- Fire resistance 703.2
- List Chapter 35
- Organizations Chapter 35

REFORMATORIES 308.4

REFRIGERATION (see MECHANICAL) 101.4.2

- Machinery room 1006.2.2.2

REFUGE AREAS (see HORIZONTAL EXIT, SMOKE COMPARTMENTS, STORM SHELTERS) 407.5.1, 408.6.2, 420.4.1, 422.3.2, 423.1.1, 423.3, 423.4, 1026.4

REFUSE CHUTE 713.13

REINFORCED CONCRETE

- (see **CONCRETE**)

- General 1901.2
- Inspections 1705.3

REINFORCEMENT

- Concrete 1908.4
- Masonry 2103.4

RELIGIOUS WORSHIP, PLACES OF

- Alarms and detection 907.2.1
- Balcony 1029.5
- Classification 303.1.4, 303.4, 305.1.1, 305.2.1, 308.6.2

- Door operations 1010.1.9.3
- Egress 1029
- Interior finishes Table 803.11, 804
- Unlimited area 507.6, 507.7

RELOCATING, BUILDING 101.4.8, D103.3

REPAIRS, BUILDING 101.4.8, 202

- Flood 1612.1, 1612.2
- Minor 105.2.2
- Permit required 105.1

RESIDENTIAL HOTELS (mail receptacles) 420.8

RESIDENTIAL OCCUPANCY (GROUP R) 310

- Accessibility Chapter 11A
- Alarm and detection 907.5.2.3.2, 907.5.2.3.3, 907.2.8, 907.2.9, 907.2.10, 907.2.11
- Area 503, 505, 506, 508, 510
- Carbon monoxide alarms 915
- Draftstopping 718.3.2, 718.4.2

Group provisions		
Group R-1 (transient)	310.3	
Group R-2 (apartment)	310.4	
Group R-3 (two dwellings per building)	310.5	
Group R-4 (group homes)	310.6, 1010.1.9.5.1	
Height	503, 504, 505, 508, 510	
Incidental uses	509	
Interior finishes	Table 803.11, 804	
Live load	Table 1607.1	
Live/work units	419	
Means of egress		
Aisles	1018.5	
Corridors	1020.1, 1020.2	
Doors	1010.1.1, 1010.1.9.5.1	
Emergency escape and rescue	1030.1	
Exit signs	1013.1, 1013.2	
Single exits	1006.3.2,	
Stairway, exit access	1019	
Travel distance	1016.2.1, 1017.2, 1006.3.2	
Mixed occupancies	508.3, 508.4	
Accessory	508.2, G801.1	
Live/work units	419	
Parking, private	406.3	
Parking below/above	510.4, 510.7, 510.9	
Special mixed	510.2	
Plumbing fixtures	2902	
Risk category	Table 1604.5.1	
Special provisions	510.2, 510.5, 510.6	
Separation	419, 420, 508.2.4, 508.3.3	
Swimming pools	3109.4	
Sprinkler protection	903.2.8, 903.3.2	
RETAINING WALLS	1807.2, 2304.12.5	
Flood provisions	G801.4	
Seismic	1803.5.12	
REVIEWING STANDS		
(see BLEACHERS AND GRANDSTANDS)		
RISERS, STAIR (see STAIRWAY CONSTRUCTION)		
Alternating tread device	1011.14	
Assembly	1011.5.2, 1029.6, 1029.7, 1029.9, 1029.13	
Closed	1011.5.5.3	
General	1011.5	
Spiral	1011.10	
Uniformity	1011.5.4	
RISK CATEGORY (Structural Design)	202, 1604.5	
Multiple occupancies	1604.5.1	
RODENTPROOFING	Appendix F	
ROLL ROOFING	1507.6	
ROOF ACCESS	1011.12	
ROOF ASSEMBLIES AND		
ROOFTOP STRUCTURES	202	
Cooling towers	1510.4	
Drainage	1503.4, 3201.4	
Fire classification	1505	
Fire district	D102.2.9	
Height modifications	504.3	
Impact resistance	1504.7	
Insulation	1508	
Materials	1506	
Mechanical equipment screen	1510.6	
Parapet walls	1503.3, 1503.6	
Penthouses	1510.2	
Photovoltaic panels and modules	1510.7, 1512.1	
Radiant barrier	202, 1509	
Roof ventilation	202	
Tanks	1510.3	
Towers, spires, domes and cupolas	1510.5	
Weather protection	1503	
Wind resistance	1504.1, 1609.5	
ROOF CONSTRUCTION		
Construction walkways	3306.7	
Coverings (see ROOF COVERINGS)	1609.5.2	
Deck	1609.5.1	
Draftstopping	718.4	
Fire resistance	Table 601	
Fireblocking	718.2	
Live loads	Table 1607.1, 1607.12	
Materials	Chapter 6	
Penetration of fire-resistant assemblies	714	
Protection from adjacent construction	3307.1	
Rain loads	1611	
Roof structures	504.3, 1509, D102.2.9	
Signs, roof mounted	H110	
Slope, minimum	Chapter 15	
Snow load	1608	
Trusses	2211.3, 2303.4, 2308.7.13	
Wood (see ROOF CONSTRUCTION, WOOD)		
ROOF CONSTRUCTION, WOOD	602.4.3, 602.4.5	
Anchorage to walls	1604.8.2	
Attic access	1209.2	
Ceiling joists	2308.7.1	
Diaphragms	2305.1, 2306.2	
Fastening requirements	2304.10	
Fire-retardant-treated	Table 601, 603.1(1)	
Framing	2304.11.3, 2308.7	
Rafters	2306.1.1	
Sheathing	2304.7, 2308.7.10	
Trusses	2303.4, 2308.7.13	
Ventilation, attic	1203.2	
Wind uplift	2308.7.5	
ROOF COVERINGS	1507	
Asphalt shingles	1507.2	
Built up	1507.10	

Clay tile	1507.3, 1513
Concrete tile	1507.3, 1513
Fire district	D102.2.4
Fire resistance	603.1(3), 1505
Flashing	1503.2, 1503.6, 1507.2.9, 1507.3.9, 1507.5.7, 1507.7.7, 1507.8.8, 1507.9.9, 1510.6
Impact resistance	1504.7
Insulation	1508
Liquid-applied coating	1507.15
Membrane	3102
Metal roof panels	1507.4
Metal roof shingles	1507.5
Modified bitumen	1507.11
Photovoltaic shingles	1507.17
Plastics, light-transmitting panels	2609
Roof replacement	202, 1511.3
Reroofing	202, 1511
Roll	1507.6
Roof recover	202, 1511.3.1
Single-ply	202, 1507.12
Slate shingles	1507.7, 1513
Sprayed polyurethane foam	1507.14
Thermoplastic single-ply	1507.13
Wind loads	1504.1, 1609.5
Wood shakes	1507.9
Wood shingles	1507.8
ROOF DECK	202
ROOF DRAINAGE	1503.4
Scuppers	202, 1503.4.2
ROOF REPLACEMENT/RECOVERING	1511.3
ROOF STRUCTURE (see ROOF ASSEMBLIES AND ROOFTOP STRUCTURES)	
ROOM DIMENSIONS	1208
ROOMING HOUSE (see BOARDING HOUSE)	310

S

SAFEGUARDS

DURING CONSTRUCTION	Chapter 33
Adjoining property protection	3307
Construction	3302
Demolition	3303
Excavations	1804.1
Fire extinguishers	3309
Means of egress	3310
Protection of pedestrians	3306
Sanitary facilities	3305
Site work	3304
Sprinkler protection	3312
Standpipes	3308.1.1, 3311

Temporary use of streets, alleys and public property	3308
SAFETY GLAZING	716.5.8.4, 2406
SCHOOLS (see EDUCATIONAL OCCUPANCY)	
SEATING	
Tables	1029.9, 1029.12.1
SEATING, FIXED	1029
Aisles	1029.9, 1029.12
Bleachers (see BLEACHERS)	
Grandstands (see GRANDSTANDS)	
Guards	1029.16
Live load	Table 1607.1
Occupant load	1004.4
Stability	1029.14
Temporary	108
SECURITY GLAZING	408.7
SECURITY GRILLES	402.8.8, 1010.1.4.4
SEISMIC	1613
Construction documents	107, 1603.1.5, 1603.1.9, 1616.1.2
Earthquake recording equipment	Appendix L
Fire resistance	704.12
Geotechnical investigation	1803.5.11, 1803.5.12
Glazing	2404
Loads	1613
Mapped acceleration parameters	1613.3.1, Figures 1613.3.1(1) through 1613.3.1(6)
Masonry	2106
Membrane structure	3102.7
Mitigation	11B-202.4
Seismic design category	202, 1613.5.6
Seismic detailing	1604.10
Site class	202, 1613.5.2
Site coefficients	202, 1613.5.3
Special inspection	1705.12
Statement of special inspections	1704.3
Steel	2205.2, 2206.2
Structural observations	1704.6.1
Structural testing	1705.13
Wood	2305, 2308.6.6, 2308.6.8, 2308.6.10
SERVICE SINKS	Table 2902.1
SERVICE STATION (see MOTOR FUEL-DISPENSING FACILITIES)	
SHAFT (see SHAFT ENCLOSURE AND VERTICAL OPENING PROTECTION)	202
SHAFT ENCLOSURE (see VERTICAL OPENING PROTECTION)	713
Continuity	713.5, 713.11, 713.12
Elevators	713.14
Exceptions	713.2, 1019, 1023,
Exterior walls	713.6
Fire-resistance rating	707.3.1, 713.4

Group I-3	408.5	Plastic	2611, D102.2.10
High-rise buildings	403.2.1.2, 403.2.3, 403.3.1.1, 403.5.1	Portable	H114
Joints	713.9, 715	Projecting	H112
Materials	713.3	Protruding objects	1003.3
Opening protection	713.8, 713.10, 714, 717.5.3	Roof	H110
Penetrations	713.8	Stairway identification	1023.8, 1023.9,
Refuse and laundry chutes	713.13	Standpipe control valve	905.7.1
Required	713.1	Toilet room	2902.4, 2902.4.1
SHEAR WALL		Walls	703.6, H111
Gypsum board and plaster	2505	SITE DRAWINGS	107.2.5
Masonry	202	SITE WORK	3304
Wood	202, 2305.1, 2306.3	SKILLED NURSING AND INTERMEDIATE-CARE FACILITIES [OSHPD 2]	1225
SHEATHING		Application	1225.2
Clearance from earth	2304.12.1.2	COMMON ELEMENTS	1225.4
Fastening	2304.10	Administration Space	1225.4.3
Fiberboard	Table 2306.3(2)	Dietetic Service Space	1225.4.2
Floor	2304.8, 2308.4.7	Employee Dressing Rooms	1225.4.8
Gypsum	Table 2506.2, 2508	Housekeeping Rooms	1225.4.6
Moisture protection	2304.12.1.2	Laundry	1225.4.7
Roof	2304.8	Nursing Service Space	1225.4.1
Roof sheathing	2308.7.10	Sterile Supplies	1225.4.4
Wall	2304.6, 2308.5.11	Storage	1225.4.5
Wood structural panels	2303.1.5, 2211.3	Definitions	1225.3
SHOPPING CENTERS		OPTIONAL SERVICES	1225.6
(see COVERED AND OPEN MALL BUILDINGS)		General	1225.6.1
SHOTCRETE	1908	Occupational Therapy Service	1225.6.3
SHUTTERS, FIRE		Physical Therapy Service	1225.6.2
(see OPENING PROTECTIVES)	716.5	Social Work Space	1225.6.5
SIDEWALKS	105.2(6), G801.4	Special Treatment Program Service	1225.6.6
Live loads	Table 1607.1	Speech Pathology and/or	
SIGNS	3107, Appendix H	Audiology Service	1225.6.4
Accessibility	1013.4, 1143A	Scope	1225.1
Accessible means of egress	1009.8.2, 1009.9 through 1009.11	SKILLED NURSING UNIT MODELS	1225.5
Animated devices	H108	HOUSEHOLD MODEL	1225.5.2
Construction	H105, H107	Cluster/household unit and resident unit ..	1225.5.2.2
Covered and open mall building	402.6.4	General construction	1225.5.2.1
Doors	1010.1.9.3, 1010.1.9.7, 1010.1.9.8	Resident living area	1225.5.2.5
Electrical	H106	Resident room	1225.5.2.3
Elevators	1124A, 3002.3, 3007.6.5, 3008.6.5	Resident support area	1225.5.2.4
Encroachment, public right-of-way	3202.3.1	Staff support area	1225.5.2.6
Exit	1013, 2702.2.5	MEDICAL MODEL	1225.5.1
Floor loads	106.1	Activity Programming Space	1225.5.1.4
Ground	H109	General Construction	1225.5.1.1
Height limitation	H109.1, H112.4	Nursing Service Space	1225.5.1.2
Illumination	H106.1	Pharmaceutical Service Space	1225.5.1.3
Luminous	403.5.5, 1013.5, 1025	SKYLIGHTS	2405, 3106.3
Marquee	H113	Light, required	1205.2
Obstruction	1003.3.2, 1003.3.3, H103	Loads	2404
Occupant load, assembly	1004.3	Plastic	2610
		Protection from adjacent construction	3307.1

Vertical opening protective	712.1.15
SLAB ON GROUND, CONCRETE	1907, 2304.12.1.4
SLATE SHINGLES	1507.7, 1513
SLEEPING UNITS	202
Group I	308
Group R	310
Scoping	101.2
Separation	420.2, 420.3
SMOKE ALARMS	
Bathrooms	907.2.11.4
Cooking appliances	907.2.11.3
Live/work unit	419.5, 907.2.11.2
Multiple-station	907.2.11
Residential aircraft hangars	412.5.3, 412.5.4, 907.2.21
Residential occupancies	420.5, 907.2.11.1, 907.2.11.2
Single-station	907.2.11
SMOKE BARRIERS	202
Construction	407.4.3, 709.4, 909.5
Doors	709.5, 716.5.3, 909.5.3
Fire-resistance rating	703, 709.3
Glazing, rated	716.6
Inspection	110.3.6
Joints	709.7, 715
Marking	703.6
Materials	709.2
Opening protection	709.5, 714.3, 714.4.4, 716, 717.5.5, 909.5.3
Penetrations	709.6, 714
Smoke control	909.5
Special provisions	
Ambulatory care facilities	422.2, 422.3, 709.5.1
Group I-1	420.4, 709.5.1
Group I-2	407.5
Group I-3	408.6, 408.7
Underground	405.4.2, 405.4.3
SMOKE COMPARTMENT	407, 408, 422
Refuge area (see REFUGE AREA)	
SMOKE CONTROL	909
Amusement buildings, special	411.1
Atrium buildings	404.5
Covered and open mall building	402.7.2
Group I-3	408.9
High-rise (smoke removal)	403.4.7, 1023.11
Special inspections	1705.18
Stages	410.3.7.2
Standby power systems	909.11, 909.20.6.2, 2702.2.15
Underground buildings	405.5

SMOKE DAMPERS	717.2 through 717.5
SMOKE DETECTION SYSTEM (see FIRE ALARM AND SMOKE DETECTION SYSTEMS)	907
SMOKE DETECTORS	
Covered and open mall building	402.8.6.1, 907.2.20
High-rise buildings	403.4.1, 907.2.13
HPM	415.11.9.3
Institutional I-2	407.8
Smoke-activated doors	716.5.9.3
Special amusement buildings	411.5
Underground buildings	907.2.18
SMOKE DEVELOPMENT	802, 803.1.1, Table 803.11
SMOKE EXHAUST SYSTEMS	
Underground buildings	405.5, 907.2.18, 909.2
SMOKE PARTITIONS	202, 710
Continuity	710.4
Doors	710.5
Ducts and air transfer openings	710.8
Fire-resistance rating	710.3
Inspection	110.3.6
Joints	710.7
Marking	703.6
Materials	710.2
Opening protection	710.5, 717.5.7
Penetrations	710.6
Special provisions	
Atriums	404.6
Group I-2	407.3
SMOKE REMOVAL (High rise)	403.4.7
SMOKE VENTS	410.3.7.1, 910
SMOKEPROOF ENCLOSURES	403.5.4, 1023.11
Design	909.20
SNOW LOAD	1608
Glazing	2404
SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS (see FOUNDATION)	Chapter 18, Chapter 18A
Depth of footings	1809.4
Excavation, grading and fill	1804, 3304, J106, J107
Expansive	1803.5.3, 1808.6
Flood hazard	1808.4
Footings and foundations	1808
Footings on or adjacent to slopes	1808.7, 3304.1.3
Foundation walls	1807.1.5, 3304.1.4
Geotechnical investigation	1803
Grading	1804.4, Appendix J
Load-bearing values	1806
Soil boring and sampling	1803.4
Soil lateral load	1610
Special inspection	1705.6

SORORITIES	310.4
SOUND-INSULATING MATERIALS (see INSULATION)	720
SOUND TRANSMISSION	1207
SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION	Chapter 31
Automatic vehicular gates	3110
Awnings and canopies (see AWNINGS and CANOPIES)	3105
Marquees (see MARQUEES)	3106
Membrane structures (see MEMBRANE STRUCTURES)	3102
Pedestrian walkways and tunnels (see WALKWAYS and TUNNELED WALKWAYS)	3104
Photovoltaic panels and modules	3111
Signs (see SIGNS)	3107
Swimming pool enclosures and safety devices (see SWIMMING POOL)	3109
Telecommunication and broadcast towers (see TOWERS)	3108
Temporary structures (see TEMPORARY STRUCTURES)	3103
SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS (see INSPECTIONS)	110.3.9, Chapter 17
Alternative test procedure	1707
Approvals	1703
Continuous special inspection	202
Contractor responsibilities	1704.4
Design strengths of materials	1706
General	1701
In-situ load tests	1708
Periodic special inspection	202
Preconstruction load tests	1709
Special inspections	1705
Statement of special inspections	1704.3
Structural observations	1704.6
Testing seismic resistance	1705.13
SPECIAL INSPECTOR	202
Qualifications	1704.2.1
SPIRAL STAIRWAYS	1011.10
Construction	1011.2, 1011.3, 1011.10
Exceptions	1011.5.2, 1011.5.3, 1011.5.5.3, 1011.10
Group I-3	408.3.4
Live/work	419.3.2
Stages	410.6.3.4
SPORTS ACTIVITY, AREA OF (see RECREATIONAL FACILITIES)	202
SPRAYED FIRE-RESISTANT MATERIALS	202, 1702.1
Application	704.13
Inspection	1705.14, 1705.15
Steel column calculated fire resistance ...	722.5.2.2

SPRINKLER SYSTEM, AUTOMATIC	903, 3312
Exempt locations	903.3.1.1.1, 903.3.1.1.2
Fire department location	912
Limited area sprinkler systems	903.3.8
Signs	914.2
Substitute for fire rating	Table 601(4)
SPRINKLER SYSTEM, REQUIRED	903
Aircraft related	412.4.6, 412.6.5
Ambulatory care facilities	422.4, 903.2.2
Amusement buildings, special	411.4
Assembly	903.2.1, 1029.6.2.3
Atrium	404.3
Basements	903.2.11.1
Building area	506.2
Children's play structures	424.3
Combustible storage	413
Commercial kitchen	903.2.11.5
Construction	903.2.12
Covered and open mall building	402.5
Drying rooms	417.4
Education	903.2.3
Exempt locations	903.3.1.1.1, 903.3.1.1.2
Factory	903.2.4
Fire areas	707.3.10
Hazardous materials	Table 414.2.5(1), Table 414.2.5(2), 903.2.11.4
Hazardous occupancies	415.4, 415.11.6.4, 415.11.11, 705.8.1, 903.2.5
Height increase	Table 504.3
High-rise buildings	403.3, 903.2.11.3
Incidental uses	Table 509
Institutional	407.6, 408.11, 420.5, 903.2.6, 903.3.2
Laundry chutes, refuse chutes, termination rooms and incinerator rooms	713.13, 903.2.11.2
Live/work units	419.5, 903.2.8
Mercantile	903.2.7
Mezzanines	505.2.1, 505.2.3, 505.3.2
Multistory buildings	903.2.11.3
Parking garages	406.6.3, 903.2.9.1, 903.2.10.1
Residential	420.5, 903.2.8, 903.3.2
Special amusement buildings	411.4
Spray finishing booth	416.5
Stages	410.7
Storage	903.2.9, 903.2.10
Supervision (see SPRINKLER SYSTEM, SUPERVISION)	903.4
Underground buildings	405.3, 903.2.11.1
Unlimited area	507
SPRINKLER SYSTEM, SUPERVISION	903.4
Service	901.6

Underground buildings 405.3

STAGES AND PLATFORMS 303, 410

Dressing rooms 410.5

Fire barrier wall 410.5.1, 410.5.2

Floor finish and floor covering 410.3, 410.4, 804.4, 805.1

Horizontal assembly 410.5.1, 410.5.2

Means of egress 410.6

Platform, temporary 410.4.1

Platform construction 410.4, 603.1(12)

Proscenium curtain 410.3.5

Proscenium wall 410.3.4

Roof vents 410.3.7.1

Scenery 410.3.6

Smoke control 410.3.7.2

Sprinkler protection 410.7

Stage construction 410.3, 603.1(12)

Standpipes 410.8, 905.3.4

Technical production areas 202, 410.3.2, 410.6.3

Ventilation 410.3.7

STAIRWAY (see ALTERNATING TREAD DEVICES, SPIRAL STAIRS, STAIRWAY CONSTRUCTION and STAIRWAY ENCLOSURE)

STAIRWAY CONSTRUCTION

Alternating tread 1011.14

Circular (see Curved)

Construction 1011.7

Curved 1011.4, 1011.9

Discharge barrier 1023.8

During construction 3310.1

Elevators 1011.12.1, 1023.4, 1023.10, 3002.7

Enclosure under 1011.7.3, 1011.7.4

Exit access 1019

Exterior exit 1027, 1028.1

Fireblocking 718.2.4

Guards 1015.2, 1015.3, 1607.8

Handrails 1011.11, 1014, 1607.8

Headroom 1011.3

Interior exit 1022

Illumination 1008.2, 1205.4, 1205.5

Ladders 408.3.5, 410.6.3.4, 1011.15, 1011.16

Landings 1011.6, 1011.8

Live load Table 1607.1, 1607.8

Luminous 403.5.5, 411.7.1, 1025

Roof access 1011.12

Seismic anchorage 2308.4.7

Spiral (see SPIRAL STAIRWAYS) 408.3.4, 410.6.3.4, 419.3.2, 1011.10

Stepped aisles 1029.13.2

Transitions 1029.9.7, 1029.9.8, 1029.10

Travel distance 1017.3.1

Treads and risers 1011.4, 1011.5

Width/capacity 1005.3.1, 1011.2

Winders 1011.4, 1011.5, 1011.10

STAIRWAY ENCLOSURE 713.1, 1019, 1023

Accessibility 1009.3

Construction 1019, 1023.2

Discharge 1023.3.1, 1028.1

Doors 716.5.9, 1010.1.9.11

Elevators within 1023.4, 3002.7

Exit access 1019

Exterior walls 705.2, 707.4, 708.5, 713.6, 1009.3.1.8, 1023.2, 1027.6

Fire-resistant construction 1019.3, 1023.2

Group I-2 1019.4

Group I-3 408.3.8, 1019.4

High-rise 403.5

Penetrations 1023.5

Pressurization 909.6, 909.20.5, 1023.11

Smokeproof 403.5.4, 405.7.2, 909.20, 1023.11

Space below, use 1011.7.3, 1011.7.4

Ventilation 1023.6

STANDARDS (see REFERENCED STANDARDS)

STANDBY POWER 2702.1, 2702.2, 2702.4

Atriums 404.7, 2702.2.15

Covered and open mall buildings 402.7.3, 2702.2.4

Elevators 1009.4, 2702.2.2, 3003.1, 3007.8, 3008.8

Hazardous occupancy 414.5.2, 415.11.10, 421.8, 2702.2.8, 2702.2.13,

High-rise 403.4.5, 2702.2.9

Horizontal sliding doors 1010.1.4.3, 2702.2.10

Membrane structures 2702.2.12, 3102.8.2

Platform lifts 1009.5, 2702.2.2

Smoke control 909.11, 2702.2.15

Smokeproof enclosure 909.20.6.2, 2702.2.15

Special inspection 1705.12.6

Underground buildings 405.8, 2702.2.16

STANDPIPE AND HOSE SYSTEMS (see STANDPIPES, REQUIRED) 905, 3106.4, 3308.1.1, 3311

Cabinet locks 905.7.2

Dry 905.8

Hose connection location 905.1, 905.4 through 905.6, 912

STANDPIPES, REQUIRED

Assembly 905.3.1, 905.3.2, 905.3.4

Covered and open mall buildings 402.7.1, 905.3.3

During construction 905.10, 3311

Elevators, fire service access 3007.9

Helistops	905.3.6
Marinas	905.3.7
Parking garages	406.5.8
Roof gardens and landscaped roofs	905.3.8
Stages	410.8, 905.3.4
Underground buildings	405.9, 905.3.5
STATE LAW	102.2
STEEL Chapter 22, <i>Chapter 22A</i>	
Bolting	2204.2
Cable structures	2208
Calculated fire resistance	722.5
Cold-formed	202, 2210, 2211
Composite structural steel and concrete	2206
Conditions of restraint	703.2.3
Decks	2210.1.1
Identification and protection	2203
Joists	202, 2207
Open web joist	2207
Parapet walls	1503.3, 1503.6
Seismic provisions	2205.2, 2206.2, 2207.1.1, 2210.2
Special inspections	1705.3
Storage racks	2209
Structural steel	2205
Welding	2204.1
STONE VENEER	1405.7
Slab-type	1405.8
STOP WORK ORDERS	115
STORAGE OCCUPANCY (GROUP S)	311
Area	406.5.4, 406.5.5, 406.6.1, 503, 505, 506, 507, 508
Equipment platforms	505.2
Group provisions	
Hazard storage, low, Group S-2	311.3
Hazard storage, moderate, Group S-1	311.2
Hazardous material display and storage	414.2.5
Height	406.5.4, 406.6.1, 503, 504, 505, 508, 510
Incidental uses	509
Interior finishes	Table 803.11, 804
Live loads	Table 1607.1
Means of egress	
Aisles	1018.5
Stairway, exit access	1019
Travel distance	1016.2.1, 1017.2, 1017.2.2, 1006.3.2
Mixed occupancies	508.3, 508.4
Accessory	508.2
Parking above/below	510.3, 510.4, 510.7, 510.8, 510.9
Special mixed	510.2
Plumbing fixtures	2902

Special provisions	
Aircraft related occupancies	412
High-piled combustible	413
Parking garages	406
Sprinkler protection	903.2.10
Unlimited area	507.3, 507.4, 507.5
STORM SHELTER	423
Emergency operation facilities	423.3
Education	423.4
Refuge area (see REFUGE AREA)	
STRENGTH	
Design requirements	1604.2
Masonry	202
Nominal	202
Required	202
STRENGTH DESIGN	202, 1604.1
Factored load	202
Limit state	202
Load combinations	1605.2
Load factor	202
Masonry	2108
STRUCTURAL DESIGN Chapter 16, <i>Chapter 16A</i>	
Aluminum	Chapter 20
Concrete	Chapter 19, <i>Chapter 19A</i>
Foundations	Chapter 18, <i>Chapter 18A</i>
Masonry	Chapter 21, <i>Chapter 21A</i>
Steel	Chapter 22, <i>Chapter 22A</i>
Wood	Chapter 23
STRUCTURAL OBSERVATION	202, 1704.6
STUCCO	2512
SUSCEPTIBLE BAY	
Definition	202
Ponding instability	1611.2
SWIMMING POOL	3109
Flood provisions	G801.5
Gates, access	3109.4.1.7
Glass	2406.4
Indoor	3109.4.2
Public	3109.3
Residential	3109.4

T

TECHNICAL PRODUCTION AREAS	410.3.2, 410.6.3
TELEPHONE EXCHANGES	304
TELESCOPIC SEATING (see FOLDING AND TELESCOPIC SEATING)	
TEMPORARY STRUCTURES	3103
Certificate of occupancy	108.3
Conformance	108.2, 3103.1.1
Construction documents	3103.2

The figure consists of two vertical bars. The left bar is labeled '1990' and the right bar is labeled '2000'. Both bars are of equal height, indicating that the number of countries in each category remained the same between 1990 and 2000.

Construction/finish materials 1210

Materials Chapter 6

Metal-plate-connected wood	2303.4.6
Wood	2303.4
TSUNAMI-GENERATED FLOOD HAZARD	Appendix M
TUNNELED WALKWAY	3104, 3202.1
TURNSTILES	1010.3

U

UNDERGROUND BUILDINGS	405
Alarms and detection	405.6
Compartmentation	405.4
Construction type	405.2
Elevators	405.4.3
Emergency power loads	405.8, 2702.2.16
Means of egress	405.7
Smoke barrier	405.4.2, 405.4.3
Smoke exhaust/control	405.5
Smokeproof enclosure	405.7.2, 1023.11
Sprinkler protection	405.3
Standby power	405.8, 2702.2.16
Standpipe system	405.9, 905.3.5
UNDERLAYMENT	202, 1707.2.3, 1507.3.3, 1507.5.3, 1507.6.3, 1507.7.3, Table 1507.8, 1507.8.3, 1507.9.3, 1507.17.3
Application	1507.2.8, 1507.3.3, 1507.4.5, 1507.5.3.1, 1507.6.3.1, 1507.7.3.1, 1507.8.3.1, 1507.9.3.1, 1507.17.4
Ice barrier	1507.2.8.2, 1507.5.4, 1507.6.4, 1507.7.4, 1507.8.4, 1507.9.4, 1507.17.4.2
UNLIMITED AREA BUILDINGS	507
UNSAFE STRUCTURES AND EQUIPMENT (see STRUCTURES, UNSAFE)	115
Appeals	113, Appendix B
Restoration	115.5
Revocation of permit	105.6
Stop work orders	115
Utilities disconnection	112.3
UNSTABLE MATERIALS	307.3, Table 414.2.5(1), Table 414.5.1, Table 415.6.2, 415.7.1, 415.9
UNUSABLE SPACE	712.3.3
USE AND OCCUPANCY	Chapter 3
Accessory	508.2
Incidental uses	509, Table 509
Mixed	508.3, 508.4
Special	Chapter 4
UTILITIES	112
Service connection	112.1
Service disconnection	112.3

Temporary connection	112.2
UTILITY AND MISCELLANEOUS OCCUPANCY (GROUP U)	312
Agricultural buildings	Appendix C
Area	503, 505, 506, 507, 508
Flood provisions	G1001
Height	503, 504, 508
Incidental uses	509
Live loads	Table 1607.1
Means of egress	
Exit signs	1013.1
Stairway, exit access	1019
Mixed occupancies	508.3, 508.4
Special provisions	
Private garages and carports	406.3
Residential aircraft hangers	412.5
Sprinkler protection	903.2.11
Travel distance	1016.2.1, 1017.1, 1006.3.2

V

VALUATION OR VALUE (see FEES, PERMIT)	109.3
VAPOR RETARDERS	1405
VEHICLE BARRIER SYSTEMS	202, 406.4.3, 1607.8.3
VEHICLE SHOW ROOMS	304
VEHICULAR FUELING	406.7
VEHICULAR GATES	3110
VEHICULAR REPAIR	406.8
VENEER	
Cement plaster	1405.15, 1411
Fastening	1405.17
Fiber-cement siding	1405.16, 1411
Glazing	1405.12, 1411
Masonry, adhered	1405.10, 1411, 2101.2.1, 2103.2.4
Masonry, anchored	1405.6, 1411, 2101.2.1
Metal	1405.11, 1411
Plastic	1411, 2605
Slab-type	1405.8, 1411
Stone	1405.7, 1411
Terra cotta	1405.9, 1411
Vinyl	1405.14, 1411
Wood	1405.5
VENTILATION (see MECHANICAL)	101.4.2
Attic	1203.2, 1503.5
Aircraft paint hangars	412.6.6
Bathrooms	1203.4.2.1
Crawl space	1203.3
Exhaust, hazardous	1203.6
Exhaust, HPM	415.11.10.2

Exit enclosure	1023.6
Fabrication areas, HPM	415.11.1.6
Hazardous	414.3, 415.9.1.7, 415.11.1.6, 415.11.5.8, 415.11.6.4, 415.11.7, 415.11.9.3
High-rise stairways	1022.10
HPM service corridors	415.11.3.2
Live/work unit	419.8
Mechanical	1203.1
Natural	1203.5
Parking	406.5.2, 406.5.5, 406.5.10, 406.6.2
Projection rooms	409.3
Repair garages	406.8.2
Roof	1203.2
Smoke exhaust	910
Smoke removal, high-rise buildings	403.4.7
Smokeproof enclosures	909.20.3, 909.20.4, 909.20.6, 1023.11
Spray rooms and spaces	416.2.2, 416.3
Stages	410.3.5, 410.3.7
Under-floor ventilation	1203.4
VENTS, PENETRATION PROTECTION	714
VERMICULITE, FIRE RESISTANT	721
VERTICAL OPENING PROTECTION	
Atriums	404.6
Duct penetrations	717.1
Elevators	713.14, 3007.6.1, 3008.6.1
Exceptions	1022.1
Group I-3	408.5
High-rise	403.2.1.2, 403.2.3, 403.5.1
Live/work units	419.4
Open parking garages	406.5.9
Permitted vertical openings	712
Shaft enclosure	713, 1019, 1023.2
VESTIBULES, EXIT DISCHARGE	1028.1
VINYL	
Expanded	802, 803.7, 803.8
Rigid	1405.14
VIOLATIONS	114
VOICE ALARM (see ALARMS, VOICE)	

W

WALKWAY	3104
During construction	3306
Encroachment, public right-of-way	3202.3.4
Fire resistance	Table 601
Live load	Table 1607.1
Materials per construction type	Chapter 6
Opening protection	716, 717

WALL, EXTERIOR	705
Bearing	Chapter 6
Coverings	1405
Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS)	1408
Exterior structural members	704.10
Fire district	D102.1, D102.2.6
Fire-resistance ratings	Table 602, 703, 705.5, 706.5.1, 707.4, 1403.4
Flashing, veneered walls	1405.4, 1405.10.1.2
Foam plastic insulation	2603.4.1.4, 2603.5
Glazing, rated	715.5
Joints	705.9, 714
Light-transmitting plastic panels	2607
Materials	705.4, 1406
Metal Composite Materials (MCM)	1407
Nonbearing	Chapter 6
Opening protection	705.8, 705.10, 716.5.6
Parapets	705.11
Projections	705.2
Structural stability	705.6
Vapor retarders	1405.3
Veneer (see VENEER)	
Weather resistance	1403.2, 1405.2, 1407.6, 1408.4, 1409.6
Weather-resistant barriers	1405.2
WALL, FIRE (see FIRE WALLS)	
WALL, FOUNDATION (see FOUNDATION)	
WALL, INTERIOR	
Finishes	803, 1210.2
Opening protection	716, 717
WALL, INTERIOR NONBEARING (see PARTITIONS)	
WALL, MASONRY	202
Wood contact	2304.12.1.3, 2304.12.1.5
WALL, PARAPET	705.11, 1503.3, 1503.6, 2109.3.4.3
WALL, PARTY (see FIRE WALLS)	
WALL, PENETRATIONS	714.3
WALL, RETAINING (see RETAINING WALL)	
WALL, VENEERED (see VENEER)	Chapter 14
WALL, WOOD CONSTRUCTION	
Bracing	2308.6
Cutting, notching, boring	2308.5.9
Exterior framing	2308.5
Fastening schedule	Table 2304.10.1
Framing	2304.3, 2308.5
Interior bearing partition	2308.5.1
Interior nonbearing partition	2308.5.1
Openings	2308.5.5
Shear walls	2305.1, 2306.3

Sheathing (see SHEATHING)	
Studs	2308.5.1
Top plates	2308.5.3.2
WATER-REACTIVE MATERIALS	Table 307.1(1), 307.4, 307.5. 415.8.4
WEATHER PROTECTION	
Exterior walls	1405.2
Roofs	1503
WELDING	2204.1
Materials, verification of steel reinforcement	1705.3.2
Special inspections	1705.2, 1705.3.1, 1705.12.3
Splices of reinforcement in masonry	2107.4
WIND LOAD	1609
Alternate all-heights method	1609.6
Construction documents	107, 1603.1.4
Exposure category	1609.4
Glazing	1609.1.2, 2404
Hurricane-prone regions	202
Masonry, empirical design	2109.1.1
Nominal design wind speed	1609.3.1
Roofs	1504.1, 1609.5, 2308.7.5
Seismic detailing required	1604.10
Special inspection	1705.11
Statement of special inspections	1704.3
Structural observation	1704.6.2
Ultimate design wind speed	1609.3
Wind-borne debris region	202
Wind tunnel testing	1504.2.1.2, 1609.1.1
WINDERS, STAIR (see STAIRWAY CONSTRUCTION)	
WINDOW	
Emergency egress	1030
Exterior, structural testing	1709.5
Fire (see OPENING PROTECTIVES)	716.5.10, 716.5.11
Glass (see GLAZING)	1405.13
Guards	1015.8
Required light	1205.2
Wells	1030.5
WIRES, PENETRATION PROTECTION	714
WOOD	Chapter 23
Allowable stress design	2306
Bracing, walls	2308.6
Calculated fire resistance	722.6
Ceiling framing	2308.7
Connectors and fasteners	2304.10
Contacting concrete, masonry or earth	2304.1.4, 2304.12.1.3, 2304.12.2.1, 2304.12.2.2, 2304.12.3
Decay, protection against	2304.12
Diaphragms	2305.1, 2305.2, 2306.2

Draftstopping	718.3, 718.4
End-jointed lumber	2303.1.1.2
Fiberboard	2303.1.5, Table 2306.3(2)
Fire-retardant treated	2303.2
Fireblocking	718.2
Floor and roof framing (see FLOOR CONSTRUCTION, WOOD)	2304.4
Floor sheathing	2304.8
Foundation	1807.1.4, 2308.6.7.4
Grade, lumber	2303.1.1
Hardboard	2303.1.7
Heavy timber construction	602.4, 2304.11
Hurricane shutters	1609.1.2
I-joist	2303.1.2
Inspection, special	1705.5, 1705.11.1, 1705.12.2
Lateral force-resisting systems	2305
Light-frame construction, conventional	2308
Load and resistance factor design	2307
Moisture content	2303.1.9.2, 2303.2.6
Nails and staples	2303.6
Plywood, hardwood	2303.3
Preservative treated	1403.5, 1403.6, 2303.1.9
Roof framing (see ROOF CONSTRUCTION, WOOD)	2304.4
Roof sheathing	2304.8
Seismic provisions	2305, 2306, 2308.6.6, 2308.6.8, 2308.6.10
Shear walls	2305, 2306.3
Standards and quality, minimum	2303
Structural panels	202, 2303.1.5
Supporting concrete or masonry	2304.13
Termite, protection against	2304.12
Trusses	2303.4
Veneer	Chapter 14
Wall framing (see WALL, WOOD CONSTRUCTION)	2304.3
Wall sheathing, exterior	2304.6
WOOD SHINGLES AND SHAKES	1507.8, 1507.9
WOOD STRUCTURAL PANELS (see WOOD)	202, 2303.1.5
Bracing	2308.6
Decorative	2303.3
Diaphragms	2305.2, 2306.2
Fastening	2304.10
Fire-retardant-treated	2303.2
Performance category	202
Quality	2303.1.5
Roof sheathing	2304.8, 2308.7.10
Seismic shear panels	2305.1, 2308.6.6.2
Shear walls	2306.3
Sheathing	2304.6.1

INDEX

Standards	2306.1
Subfloors	804.4
Veneer	1405.5

Y

YARDS OR COURTS	1206
Exit discharge	1028.4
Group I-2	407.9
Group I-3	408.3.6, 408.6.2
Light, natural	1205
Motor fuel-dispensing facilities.	406.7.2
Occupant load	1004.5
Parking garage, open	406.5.5
Unlimited area building	507.2, 507.2.1

HISTORY NOTE APPENDIX

California Building Code Title 24, Part 2, California Code of Regulations (CCR)

For prior code history, see the History Note Appendix to the *California Building Code* 2013 Triennial Edition, effective January 1, 2014.

1. (BSC 05/15, SFM 06/15, DSA-AC 01/15, DSA-SS 02/15, HCD 03/15, OSHPD 02/15 & 04/15, SLC 01/15) - Adopt the 2015 edition of the *International Building Code* published by the International Code Council, for incorporation into the 2016 *California Building Code*, CCR Title 24, Part 2 with amendments for State regulated occupancies, effective on January 1, 2017.
2. Errata to correct editorial errors within the preface as well as throughout various chapters in this code. Effective January 1, 2017.



INTERNATIONAL
CODE
COUNCIL®

People Helping People Build a Safer World®

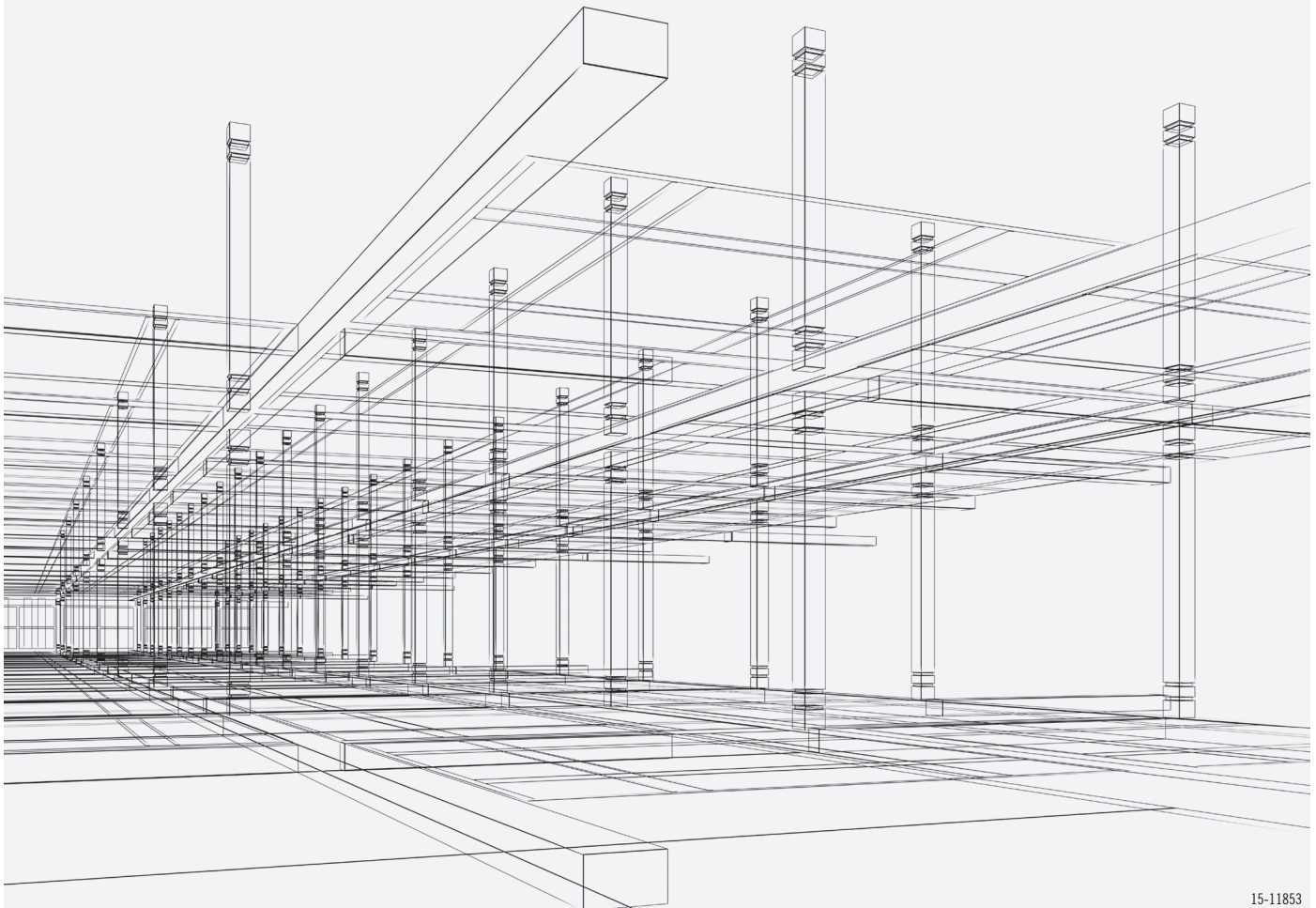
ICC Plan Review Services...

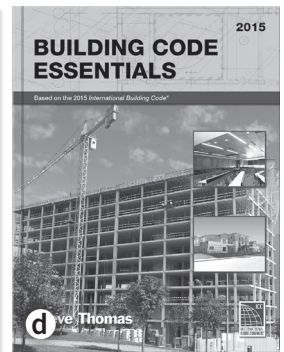
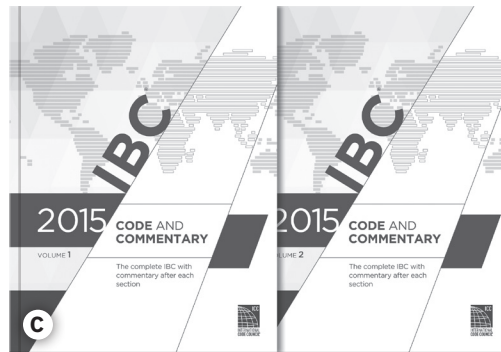
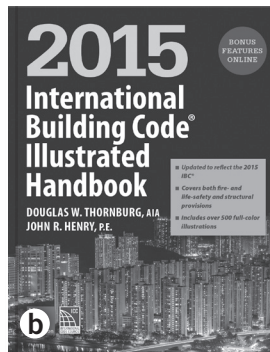
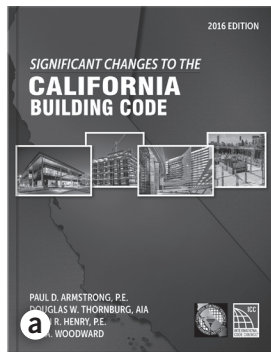
Delivers the Most Detailed and Precise Plan Reviews in the Building Industry

As the association dedicated to the development of the I-Codes, no one has a better understanding of **all the International Codes** than our licensed and ICC-Certified engineers and architects. Whether you're falling behind in plan reviews or need special code expertise for highly complex projects, the I-Code experts at the International Code Council's (ICC) Plan Review Services is here to help you!

NEW! Streamline the document submittal process with our cloud-based ProjectDox, powered by Avolve plan review submittal system for easy plan review document submittal, storage and review.

To learn more about ICC Plan Review Services, visit www.iccsafe.org/planreview or contact: David Hunter—Director of Business Development and Outreach, Technical Services, 888-ICC-SAFE (888-422-7233), ext. 5577, dhunter@iccsafe.org





Count on ICC for Your California Building Code Tools

a. Significant Changes to the California Building Code, 2016

Key changes are identified then followed by in-depth discussion and helpful visuals. Based on the popular Significant Changes to the I-Codes series from ICC and Cengage Learning, this full-color guide is a valuable resource for learning the newest CBC. The book identifies critical changes from the 2013 to 2016 editions and adds expert discussion with a detailed illustration for each change.

SOFT COVER #5521S16
PDF DOWNLOAD #8950P733

Turbo Tabs for 2016 California Building Code

Flip right to the most commonly used sections of the code! Full-page inserts feature key sections of the code printed on the tabs in an easy-to-read format.

#0001TL16CA

500+ COLOR ILLUSTRATIONS!

b. 2015 International Building Code® Illustrated Handbook

An easy-to-use visual guide to the 2015 IBC®

- Bonus features online
- Expanded topics
- 500+ color illustrations
- New 7.5" x 9.5" format

Thoroughly revised to reflect the 2015 IBC, this full-color guide makes it easy to understand and apply complex IBC provisions and achieve compliance. The Handbook provides all the information you need to get construction jobs done right, on time, and up to the requirements of the 2015 IBC.

HARD COVER #4000S15
PDF DOWNLOAD #8950P685

c. 2015 IBC Code and Commentary, Volumes 1 and 2 (Chapters 1–35)

This helpful publication contains the full text of the 2015 IBC, including tables and figures, followed by corresponding commentary at the end of each section to help code users understand the intent of the code provisions and learn how to apply them effectively.

SOFT COVER #3010S15
PDF DOWNLOAD #870P15
SOFT + PDF COMBO #3010SP15

2015 IEBC® Code and Commentary is also available.

d. Building Code Essentials: Based on the 2015 IBC

Detailed full-color illustrations enhance comprehension of code provisions

Explores those code provisions essential to understanding the application of the IBC in a straightforward and easy-to-read format. The user-friendly approach of the text simplifies critical concepts so that users can achieve a more complete understanding of the code's intent. Full-color illustrations, examples and simplified tables assist the reader in visualizing the code requirements. This up-to-date, step-by-step guide's topic organization reflects the intent of the IBC and facilitates understanding and application of the code provisions.

SOFT COVER #4031S15
PDF DOWNLOAD #8950P596

Order Your California Code Tools Today!
1-800-786-4452 | www.iccsafe.org/books